The specifications and information regarding the products in this manual are subject to change without notice. All statements, information, and recommendations in this manual are believed to be accurate but are presented without warranty of any kind, express or implied. Users must take full responsibility for their application of any products.

The software license and limited warranty for the accompanying product are set forth in the information packet that shipped with the product and are incorporated herein by this reference. If you are unable to locate the software license or limited warranty, contact your Cisco representative for a copy.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB’s public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

Notwithstanding any other warranty herein, all document files and software of these suppliers are provided "as is" with all faults. Cisco and the above-named suppliers disclaim all warranties, expressed or implied, including, without limitation, those of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and noninfringement or arising from a course of dealing, usage, or trade practice.

In no event shall Cisco or its suppliers be liable for any indirect, special, consequential, or incidental damages, including, without limitation, lost profits or loss or damage to data arising out of the use or inability to use this manual, even if Cisco or its suppliers have been advised of the possibility of such damages.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: http://www.cisco.com/go/trademarks. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1110R)

© 2014 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting Commands 1

- aaa accounting 4
- aaa accounting system default 7
- aaa accounting system rp-failover 9
- aaa accounting update 11
- aaa authentication 13
- aaa authorization 16
- aaa default-taskgroup 19
- aaa group server radius 20
- aaa group server tacacs+ 22
- accounting (line) 24
- authorization (line) 26
- deadtime (server-group configuration) 28
- description (AAA) 30
- group (AAA) 32
- inherit taskgroup 34
- inherit usergroup 36
- key (RADIUS) 38
- key (TACACS+) 40
- login authentication 42
- password (AAA) 44
- radius-server dead-criteria time 46
- radius-server dead-criteria tries 48
- radius-server deadtime 50
- radius-server key 52
- radius-server retransmit 54
- radius-server timeout 56
- radius source-interface 58
retransmit (RADIUS)  60
secret  62
server (RADIUS)  64
server (TACACS+)  66
server-private (RADIUS)  68
server-private (TACACS+)  71
show aaa  73
show radius  79
show radius accounting  81
show radius authentication  83
show radius client  85
show radius dead-criteria  87
show radius server-groups  89
show tacacs  92
show tacacs server-groups  94
show user  96
single-connection  100
tacacs-server host  102
tacacs-server key  105
tacacs-server timeout  107
tacacs source-interface  108
task  110
taskgroup  112
timeout (RADIUS)  114
timeout (TACACS+)  116
timeout login response  118
usergroup  120
username  122
users group  126
vrf (RADIUS)  128
vrf (TACACS+)  130

C H A P T E R  2  IPSec Commands  133
   clear crypto ipsec sa  134
description (IPSec profile)  136
interface tunnel-ip (GRE)  137
show crypto ipsec sa  138
show crypto ipsec summary  142
show crypto ipsec transform-set  144
tunnel mode (IP)  145
tunnel tos (IP)  146
tunnel ttl (IP)  147
tunnel dfbit disable (IP)  148

CHAPTER 3  Keychain Management Commands  149
accept-lifetime  150
accept-tolerance  152
key (key chain)  154
key chain (key chain)  156
key-string (keychain)  158
send-lifetime  160
show key chain  162

CHAPTER 4  Lawful Intercept Commands  165
lawful-intercept disable  166
overlap-tap enable  167

CHAPTER 5  Management Plane Protection Commands  169
address ipv4 (MPP)  170
allow  172
control-plane  175
inband  176
interface (MPP)  178
management-plane  180
out-of-band  181
show mgmt-plane  183
vrf (MPP)  185

CHAPTER 6  Public Key Infrastructure Commands  187
clear crypto ca certificates  189
clear crypto ca crl 190

CRL optional (trustpoint) 192
crypto ca authenticate 194
crypto ca cancel-enroll 196
crypto ca enroll 197
crypto ca import 199
crypto ca trustpoint 200
crypto key generate dsa 203
crypto key generate rsa 205
crypto key import authentication rsa 207
crypto key zeroize dsa 208
crypto key zeroize rsa 209
description (trustpoint) 211
enrollment retry count 212
enrollment retry period 214
enrollment terminal 216
enrollment url 217
ip-address (trustpoint) 219
query url 221
rsakeypair 223
serial-number (trustpoint) 224
sftp-password (trustpoint) 226
sftp-username (trustpoint) 228
subject-name (trustpoint) 230
show crypto ca certificates 232
show crypto ca crls 234
show crypto key mypubkey dsa 235
show crypto key mypubkey rsa 237

---

CHAPTER 7  Software Authentication Manager Commands 239

sam add certificate 240

sam delete certificate 242

sam prompt-interval 244

sam verify 246

show sam certificate 248
show sam crl 252
show sam log 254
show sam package 256
show sam sysinfo 259

CHAPTER 8 Secure Shell Commands 261
clear ssh 262
sftp 264
sftp (Interactive Mode) 268
show ssh 271
show ssh session details 273
ssh 275
ssh client knownhost 278
ssh client source-interface 280
ssh client vrf 282
ssh server 284
ssh server rekey-time 286
ssh server rekey-volume 287
show ssh rekey 288
ssh server logging 290
ssh server rate-limit 292
ssh server session-limit 293
ssh server v2 295
ssh server netconf port 296
ssh timeout 298

CHAPTER 9 Secure Socket Layer Protocol Commands 299
show ssl 300

CHAPTER 10 FIPS commands 303
crypto fips-mode 304
Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting Commands

This module describes the commands used to configure authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) services.

For detailed information about AAA concepts, configuration tasks, and examples, see the Configuring AAA Services on Cisco IOS XR Software configuration module.

- aaa accounting, page 4
- aaa accounting system default, page 7
- aaa accounting system rp-failover, page 9
- aaa accounting update, page 11
- aaa authentication, page 13
- aaa authorization, page 16
- aaa default-taskgroup, page 19
- aaa group server radius, page 20
- aaa group server tacacs+, page 22
- accounting (line), page 24
- authorization (line), page 26
- deadtime (server-group configuration), page 28
- description (AAA), page 30
- group (AAA), page 32
- inherit taskgroup, page 34
- inherit usergroup, page 36
- key (RADIUS), page 38
- key (TACACS+), page 40
- login authentication, page 42
• password (AAA), page 44
• radius-server dead-criteria time, page 46
• radius-server dead-criteria tries, page 48
• radius-server deadtime, page 50
• radius-server key, page 52
• radius-server retransmit, page 54
• radius-server timeout, page 56
• radius source-interface, page 58
• retransmit (RADIUS), page 60
• secret, page 62
• server (RADIUS), page 64
• server (TACACS+), page 66
• server-private (RADIUS), page 68
• server-private (TACACS+), page 71
• show aaa, page 73
• show radius, page 79
• show radius accounting, page 81
• show radius authentication, page 83
• show radius client, page 85
• show radius dead-criteria, page 87
• show radius server-groups, page 89
• show tacacs, page 92
• show tacacs server-groups, page 94
• show user, page 96
• single-connection, page 100
• tacacs-server host, page 102
• tacacs-server key, page 105
• tacacs-server timeout, page 107
• tacacs source-interface, page 108
• task, page 110
• taskgroup, page 112
• timeout (RADIUS), page 114
• timeout (TACACS+), page 116
Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting Commands

- timeout login response, page 118
- usergroup, page 120
- username, page 122
- users group, page 126
- vrf (RADIUS), page 128
- vrf (TACACS+), page 130
aaa accounting

To create a method list for accounting, use the `aaa accounting` command. To remove a list name from the system, use the `no` form of this command.

```
aaa accounting {commands| exec| network | subscriber | system } {default| list-name} {start-stop| stop-only} {none| method}
no aaa accounting {commands| exec| network} {default| list-name}
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>commands</code></td>
<td>Enables accounting for EXEC shell commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exec</code></td>
<td>Enables accounting of an EXEC session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>network</code></td>
<td>Enables accounting for all network-related service requests, such as Internet Key Exchange (IKE) and Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>subscriber</code></td>
<td>Sets accounting lists for subscribers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>system</code></td>
<td>Enables accounting for all system-related events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>default</code></td>
<td>Uses the listed accounting methods that follow this keyword as the default list of methods for accounting services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>list-name</code></td>
<td>Character string used to name the accounting method list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>start-stop</code></td>
<td>Sends a &quot;start accounting&quot; notice at the beginning of a process and a &quot;stop accounting&quot; notice at the end of a process. The requested user process begins regardless of whether the &quot;start accounting&quot; notice was received by the accounting server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>stop-only</code></td>
<td>Sends a &quot;stop accounting&quot; notice at the end of the requested user process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>none</code></td>
<td>Uses no accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>method</code></td>
<td>Method used to enable AAA system accounting. The value is one of the following options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• group tacacs+—Uses the list of all TACACS+ servers for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• group radius—Uses the list of all RADIUS servers for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• group named-group—Uses a named subset of TACACS+ or RADIUS servers for accounting, as defined by the <code>aaa group server tacacs+</code> or <code>aaa group server radius</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

AAA accounting is disabled.
**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.7.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 5.3.0</td>
<td>The <strong>mobile</strong> keyword was added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>The <strong>network</strong> keyword and <strong>method</strong> argument were added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `aaa accounting` command to create default or named method lists defining specific accounting methods and that can be used on a per-line or per-interface basis. You can specify up to four methods in the method list. The list name can be applied to a line (console, aux, or vty template) to enable accounting on that particular line.

The Cisco IOS XR software supports both TACACS+ and RADIUS methods for accounting. The router reports user activity to the security server in the form of accounting records, which are stored on the security server.

Method lists for accounting define the way accounting is performed, enabling you to designate a particular security protocol that is used on specific lines or interfaces for particular types of accounting services.

For minimal accounting, include the **stop-only** keyword to send a "stop accounting" notice after the requested user process. For more accounting, you can include the **start-stop** keyword, so that TACACS+ or RADIUS sends a "start accounting" notice at the beginning of the requested process and a "stop accounting" notice after the process. The accounting record is stored only on the TACACS+ or RADIUS server.

The requested user process begins regardless of whether the "start accounting" notice was received by the accounting server.

**Note**

This command cannot be used with TACACS or extended TACACS.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The following example shows how to define a default commands accounting method list, where accounting services are provided by a TACACS+ security server, with a stop-only restriction:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa accounting commands default stop-only group tacacs+

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa authorization, on page 16</td>
<td>Creates a method list for authorization.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
aaa accounting system default

To enable authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) system accounting, use the `aaa accounting system default` command. To disable system accounting, use the `no` form of this command.

```
aaa accounting system default {start-stop| stop-only} {none| method}
no aaa accounting system default
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>start-stop</code></td>
<td>Sends a &quot;start accounting&quot; notice during system bootup and a &quot;stop accounting&quot; notice during system shutdown or reload.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>stop-only</code></td>
<td>Sends a &quot;stop accounting&quot; notice during system shutdown or reload.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>none</code></td>
<td>Uses no accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>method</code></td>
<td>Method used to enable AAA system accounting. The value is one of the following options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>group tacacs+</code>—Uses the list of all TACACS+ servers for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>group radius</code>—Uses the list of all RADIUS servers for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <code>group named-group</code>—Uses a named subset of TACACS+ or RADIUS servers for accounting, as defined by the <code>aaa group server tacacs+</code> or <code>aaa group server radius</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

AAA accounting is disabled.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>The <code>method</code> argument was added to specify either <code>group tacacs+</code>, <code>group radius</code>, or <code>group named-group</code> options.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

System accounting does not use named accounting lists; you can define only the default list for system accounting.

The default method list is automatically applied to all interfaces or lines. If no default method list is defined, then no accounting takes place.
You can specify up to four methods in the method list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

This example shows how to cause a "start accounting" record to be sent to a TACACS+ server when a router initially boots. A "stop accounting" record is also sent when a router is shut down or reloaded.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa accounting system default start-stop group tacacs+
```
aaa accounting system rp-failover

To create an accounting list to send rp-failover or rp-switchover start or stop accounting messages, use the **aaa accounting system rp-failover** command in Global Configuration mode. To disable the system accounting for rp-failover, use the **no** form of this command.

```
aaa accounting system rp-failover {list_name {start-stop| stop-only}}| default {start-stop| stop-only}}
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>list_name</td>
<td>Specifies the accounting list name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default</td>
<td>Specifies the default accounting list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start-stop</td>
<td>Enables the start and stop records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop-only</td>
<td>Enables the stop records only.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Global Configuration mode

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 4.2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

No specific guidelines impact the use of this command.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

This is an example of configuring the **aaa accounting system rp-failover** command for default accounting list:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa accounting system rp-failover default start-stop none
```
aaa accounting system rp-failover

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa attribute format</td>
<td>Create an AAA attribute format name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
aaa accounting update

To enable periodic interim accounting records to be sent to the accounting server, use the `aaa accounting update` command. To disable the interim accounting updates, use the `no` form of this command.

```
aaa accounting update {newinfo|periodic minutes}
no aaa accounting update
```

**Syntax Description**

- **newinfo** (Optional) Sends an interim accounting record to the accounting server whenever there is new accounting information to report relating to the user in question.
- **periodic minutes** (Optional) Sends an interim accounting record to the accounting server periodically, as defined by the `minutes` argument, which is an integer that specifies the number of minutes. The range is from 1 to 35791394 minutes.

**Command Default**

AAA accounting update is disabled.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

If the `newinfo` keyword is used, interim accounting records are sent to the accounting server every time there is new accounting information to report. An example of this report would be when IP Control Protocol (IPCP) completes IP address negotiation with the remote peer. The interim accounting record includes the negotiated IP address used by the remote peer.

When used with the `periodic` keyword, interim accounting records are sent periodically as defined by the `minutes` argument. The interim accounting record contains all the accounting information recorded for that user up to the time the accounting record is sent.

When using both the `newinfo` and `periodic` keywords, interim accounting records are sent to the accounting server every time there is new accounting information to report, and accounting records are sent to the accounting server periodically as defined by the `minutes` argument. For example, if you configure the `aaa accounting update` command with the `newinfo` and `periodic` keywords, all users currently logged in continue to generate periodic interim accounting records while new users generate accounting records based on the `newinfo` algorithm.
Using the `aaa accounting update` command with the `periodic` keyword can cause heavy congestion when many users are logged into the network.

Both `periodic` and `newinfo` keywords are mutually exclusive; therefore, only one keyword can be configured at a time.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows how to send periodic interim accounting records to the RADIUS server at 30-minute intervals:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa accounting update periodic 30
```

The following example shows how to send interim accounting records to the RADIUS server when there is new accounting information to report:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa accounting update newinfo
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>aaa accounting</code>, on page 4</td>
<td>Creates a method list for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>aaa authorization</code>, on page 16</td>
<td>Creates a method list for authorization.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
aaa authentication

To create a method list for authentication, use the **aaa authentication** command. To disable this authentication method, use the **no** form of this command.

```
aaa authentication {login| ppp} {default| list-name| remote} method-list
no aaa authentication {login| ppp} {default| list-name| remote} method-list
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>login</td>
<td>Sets authentication for login.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppp</td>
<td>Sets authentication for Point-to-Point Protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default</td>
<td>Uses the listed authentication methods that follow this keyword as the default list of methods for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subscriber</td>
<td>Sets the authentication list for the subscriber.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list-name</td>
<td>Character string used to name the authentication method list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remote</td>
<td>Uses the listed authentication methods that follow this keyword as the default list of methods for administrative authentication on a remote non-owner secure domain router. The <strong>remote</strong> keyword is used only with the <strong>login</strong> keyword and not with the <strong>ppp</strong> keyword.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**method-list** Method used to enable AAA system accounting. The value is one of the following options:

- **group tacacs+**—Specifies a method list that uses the list of all configured TACACS+ servers for authentication.
- **group radius**—Specifies a method list that uses the list of all configured RADIUS servers for authentication.
- **group named-group**—Specifies a method list that uses a named subset of TACACS+ or RADIUS servers for authentication, as defined by the **aaa group server tacacs+** or **aaa group server radius** command.
- **local**—Specifies a method list that uses the local username database method for authentication. AAA method rollover happens beyond the local method if username is not defined in the local group.
- **line**—Specifies a method list that uses the line password for authentication.

**Command Default** Default behavior applies the local authentication on all ports.

**Command Modes** Global configuration or Administration Configuration
Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>The method-list argument was added to specify either group tacacs+, group radius, group named-group, local, or line options.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines

Use the `aaa authentication` command to create a series of authentication methods, or method list. You can specify up to four methods in the method list. A method list is a named list describing the authentication methods (such as TACACS+ or RADIUS) in sequence. The subsequent methods of authentication are used only if the initial method is not available, not if it fails.

The default method list is applied for all interfaces for authentication, except when a different named method list is explicitly specified—in which case the explicitly specified method list overrides the default list.

For console and vty access, if no authentication is configured, a default of local method is applied.

**Note**

- The group tacacs+, group radius, and group group-name forms of this command refer to a set of previously defined TACACS+ or RADIUS servers.
- Use the `tacacs-server host` or `radius-server host` command to configure the host servers.
- Use the `aaa group server tacacs+` or `aaa group server radius` command to create a named subset of servers.
- The login keyword, remote keyword, local option, and group option are available only in administration configuration mode.

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following example shows how to specify the default method list for authentication, and also enable authentication for console in global configuration mode:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
```

The following example shows how to specify the remote method list for authentication, and also enable authentication for console in administration configuration mode:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# admin
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router (admin)# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(admin-config)# aaa authentication login remote local group tacacs+
```
Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting, on page 4</td>
<td>Creates a method list for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa authorization, on page 16</td>
<td>Creates a method list for authorization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server radius, on page 20</td>
<td>Groups different RADIUS server hosts into distinct lists and distinct methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server tacacs+, on page 22</td>
<td>Groups different TACACS+ server hosts into distinct lists and distinct methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>login authentication, on page 42</td>
<td>Enables AAA authentication for logins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tacacs-server host, on page 102</td>
<td>Specifies a TACACS+ host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
aaa authorization

To create a method list for authorization, use the `aaa authorization` command. To disable authorization for a function, use the `no` form of this command.

```
aaa authorization {commands|eventmanager|exec|network|subscriber} {default|list-name} {none|local|group {tacacs+|radius|group-name}}
no aaa authorization {commands|eventmanager|exec|network|subscriber} {default|list-name}
```

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>commands</td>
<td>Configures authorization for all EXEC shell commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eventmanager</td>
<td>Applies an authorization method for authorizing an event manager (fault manager).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exec</td>
<td>Configures authorization for an interactive (EXEC) session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>network</td>
<td>Configures authorization for network services, such as PPP or Internet Key Exchange (IKE).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subscriber</td>
<td>Sets the authorization lists for the subscriber.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default</td>
<td>Uses the listed authorization methods that follow this keyword as the default list of methods for authorization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list-name</td>
<td>Character string used to name the list of authorization methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>none</td>
<td>Uses no authorization. If you specify <code>none</code>, no subsequent authorization methods is attempted. However, the task ID authorization is always required and cannot be disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local</td>
<td>Uses local authorization. This method of authorization is not available for command authorization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group tacacs+</td>
<td>Uses the list of all configured TACACS+ servers for authorization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group radius</td>
<td>Uses the list of all configured RADIUS servers for authorization. This method of authorization is not available for command authorization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group group-name</td>
<td>Uses a named subset of TACACS+ or RADIUS servers for authorization as defined by the <code>aaa group server tacacs+</code> or <code>aaa group server radius</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Command Default

Authorization is disabled for all actions (equivalent to the method `none` keyword).

### Command Modes

Global configuration
### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The <code>eventmanager</code> keyword (fault manager) was added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

Use the `aaa authorization` command to create method lists defining specific authorization methods that can be used on a per-line or per-interface basis. You can specify up to four methods in the method list.

**Note**

The command authorization mentioned here applies to the one performed by an external AAA server and not for task-based authorization.

Method lists for authorization define the ways authorization will be performed and the sequence in which these methods will be performed. A method list is a named list describing the authorization methods (such as TACACS+), in sequence. Method lists enable you to designate one or more security protocols for authorization, thus ensuring a backup system in case the initial method fails. Cisco IOS XR software uses the first method listed to authorize users for specific network services; if that method fails to respond, Cisco IOS XR software selects the next method listed in the method list. This process continues until there is successful communication with a listed authorization method or until all methods defined have been exhausted.

**Note**

Cisco IOS XR software attempts authorization with the next listed method only when there is no response (not a failure) from the previous method. If authorization fails at any point in this cycle—meaning that the security server or local username database responds by denying the user services—the authorization process stops and no other authorization methods are attempted.

The Cisco IOS XR software supports the following methods for authorization:

- **none**—The router does not request authorization information; authorization is not performed over this line or interface.
- **local**—Use the local database for authorization.
- **group tacacs+**—Use the list of all configured TACACS+ servers for authorization.
- **group radius**—Use the list of all configured RADIUS servers for authorization.
- **group group-name**—Uses a named subset of TACACS+ or RADIUS servers for authorization.

Method lists are specific to the type of authorization being requested. Cisco IOS XR software supports four types of AAA authorization:

- **Commands authorization**—Applies to the EXEC mode commands a user issues. Command authorization attempts authorization for all EXEC mode commands.
"Command" authorization is distinct from "task-based" authorization, which is based on the task profile established during authentication.

**EXEC authorization**—Applies authorization for starting an EXEC session.

- The exec keyword is no longer used to authorize the fault manager service. The eventmanager keyword (fault manager) is used to authorize the fault manager service. The exec keyword is used for EXEC authorization.

- Network authorization—Applies authorization for network services, such as IKE.

- Event manager authorization—Applies an authorization method for authorizing an event manager (fault manager). RADIUS servers are not allowed to be configured for the event manager (fault manager) authorization. You are allowed to use TACACS+ or locald.

- The eventmanager keyword (fault manager) replaces the exec keyword to authorize event managers (fault managers).

When you create a named method list, you are defining a particular list of authorization methods for the indicated authorization type. When defined, method lists must be applied to specific lines or interfaces before any of the defined methods are performed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td></td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to define the network authorization method list named listname1, which specifies that TACACS+ authorization is used:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa authorization commands listname1 group tacacs+
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Commands</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aaa accounting, on page 4</td>
<td>Creates a method list for accounting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
aaa default-taskgroup

To specify a task group for both remote TACACS+ authentication and RADIUS authentication, use the **aaa default-taskgroup** command. To remove this default task group, enter the **no** form of this command.

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>aaa default-taskgroup taskgroup-name</code></td>
<td>Name of an existing task group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>no aaa default-taskgroup</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Command Default

No default task group is assigned for remote authentication.

### Command Modes

Global configuration

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **aaa default-taskgroup** command to specify an existing task group for remote TACACS+ authentication.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows how to specify taskgroup1 as the default task group for remote TACACS+ authentication:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa default-taskgroup taskgroup1
```
aaa group server radius

To group different RADIUS server hosts into distinct lists, use the **aaa group server radius** command. To remove a group server from the configuration list, enter the **no** form of this command.

**aaa group server radius** group-name

**no aaa group server radius** group-name

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>group-name</td>
<td>Character string used to name the group of servers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Command Default

This command is not enabled.

### Command Modes

Global configuration

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **aaa group server radius** command to group existing server hosts, which allows you to select a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service. A server group is used in conjunction with a global server-host list. The server group lists the IP addresses or hostnames of the selected server hosts.

Server groups can also include multiple host entries for the same server, as long as each entry has a unique identifier. The combination of an IP address and User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port number creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS hosts providing a specific authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) service. In other words, this unique identifier enables RADIUS requests to be sent to different UDP ports on a server at the same IP address. If two different host entries on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service, for example, accounting, the second host entry acts as an automatic switchover backup to the first host entry. Using this example, if the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the network access server tries the second host entry on the same device for accounting services. The RADIUS host entries are tried in the order in which they are configured in the server group.

All members of a server group must be the same type, that is, RADIUS.

The server group cannot be named radius or tacacs.

This command enters server group configuration mode. You can use the server command to associate a particular RADIUS server with the defined server group.
The following example shows the configuration of an AAA group server named radgroup1, which comprises three member servers:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa group server radius radgroup1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server 10.0.0.5 auth-port 1700 acct-port 1701
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server 10.0.0.10 auth-port 1702 acct-port 1703
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server 10.0.0.20 auth-port 1705 acct-port 1706
```

If the **auth-port port-number** and **acct-port port-number** keywords and arguments are not specified, the default value of the **port-number** argument for the **auth-port** keyword is 1645 and the default value of the **port-number** argument for the **acct-port** keyword is 1646.

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>key (RADIUS), on page 38</code></td>
<td>Specifies the authentication and encryption key that is used between the router and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>radius source-interface, on page 58</code></td>
<td>Forces RADIUS to use the IP address of a specified interface or subinterface for all outgoing RADIUS packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>retransmit (RADIUS), on page 60</code></td>
<td>Specifies the number of times a RADIUS request is resent to a server if the server is not responding or is responding slowly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>server (RADIUS), on page 64</code></td>
<td>Associates a RADIUS server with a defined server group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>server-private (RADIUS), on page 68</code></td>
<td>Configures the IP address of the private RADIUS server for the group server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>timeout (RADIUS), on page 114</code></td>
<td>Specifies the number of seconds the router waits for the RADIUS server to reply before retransmitting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>vrf (RADIUS), on page 128</code></td>
<td>Configures the Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an AAA RADIUS server group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
aaa group server tacacs+

To group different TACACS+ server hosts into distinct lists, use the **aaa group server tacacs+** command. To remove a server group from the configuration list, enter the **no** form of this command.

**aaa group server tacacs+ group-name**

**no aaa group server tacacs+ group-name**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>group-name</strong></td>
<td>Character string used to name a group of servers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Default</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This command is not enabled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Modes</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Global configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command History</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Release</strong></td>
<td><strong>Modification</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 5.3.0</td>
<td>IPv6 support was introduced on this command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

The AAA server-group feature introduces a way to group existing server hosts. The feature enables you to select a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service.

The **aaa group server tacacs+** command enters server group configuration mode. The **server** command associates a particular TACACS+ server with the defined server group.

A **server group** is a list of server hosts of a particular type. The supported server host type is TACACS+ server hosts. A server group is used with a global server host list. The server group lists the IP addresses or hostnames of the selected server hosts.

The server group cannot be named radius or tacacs.

**Note**

Group name methods refer to a set of previously defined TACACS+ servers. Use the **tacacs-server host** command to configure the host servers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Task ID</strong></td>
<td><strong>Operations</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following examples show the configuration of an AAA group server named tacgroup1, which comprises three member servers:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ tacgroup1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-tacacs)# server 192.168.200.226
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-tacacs)# server 192.168.200.227
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-tacacs)# server 192.168.200.228
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>aaa accounting</code>, on page 4</td>
<td>Creates a method list for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>aaa authentication</code>, on page 13</td>
<td>Creates a method list for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>aaa authorization</code>, on page 16</td>
<td>Creates a method list for authorization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>server (TACACS+)</code>, on page 66</td>
<td>Specifies the host name or IP address of an external TACACS+ server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tacacs-server host</code>, on page 102</td>
<td>Specifies a TACACS+ host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
accounting (line)

To enable authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) accounting services for a specific line or group of lines, use the `accounting` command. To disable AAA accounting services, use the `no` form of this command.

```
accounting {commands|exec} {default|list-name}
no accounting {commands|exec}
```

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>commands</code></td>
<td>Enables accounting on the selected lines for all EXEC shell commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exec</code></td>
<td>Enables accounting of EXEC session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>default</code></td>
<td>The name of the default method list, created with the <code>aaa accounting</code> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>list-name</code></td>
<td>Specifies the name of a list of accounting methods to use. The list is created with the <code>aaa accounting</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Command Default

Accounting is disabled.

### Command Modes

Line template configuration

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

After you enable the `aaa accounting` command and define a named accounting method list (or use the default method list) for a particular type of accounting, you must apply the defined lists to the appropriate lines for accounting services to take place. Use the `accounting` command to apply the specified method lists to the selected line or group of lines. If a method list is not specified this way, no accounting is applied to the selected line or group of lines.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following example shows how to enable command accounting services using the accounting method list named `listname2` on a line template named `configure`:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# line template configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-line)# accounting commands listname2
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>aaa accounting</strong>, on page 4</td>
<td>Creates a method list for accounting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
authorization (line)

To enable authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authorization for a specific line or group of lines, use the `authorization` command in line template configuration mode. To disable authorization, use the `no` form of this command.

```
authorization {commands|exec |eventmanager} {default|list-name}
```

```
no authorization {commands|exec |eventmanager}
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>commands</td>
<td>Enables authorization on the selected lines for all commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exec</td>
<td>Enables authorization for an interactive (EXEC) session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default</td>
<td>Applies the default method list, created with the <code>aaa authorization</code> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eventmanager</td>
<td>Sets eventmanager authorization method. This method is used for the embedded event manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list-name</td>
<td>Specifies the name of a list of authorization methods to use. If no list name is specified, the system uses the default. The list is created with the <code>aaa authorization</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**
Authorization is not enabled.

**Command Modes**
Line template configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
After you use the `aaa authorization` command to define a named authorization method list (or use the default method list) for a particular type of authorization, you must apply the defined lists to the appropriate lines for authorization to take place. Use the `authorization` command to apply the specified method lists (or, if none is specified, the default method list) to the selected line or group of lines.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The following example shows how to enable command authorization using the method list named `listname4` on a line template named `configure`:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# line template configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-line)# authorization commands listname4
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa authorization, on page 16</td>
<td>Creates a method list for authorization.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
deadtime (server-group configuration)

To configure the deadtime value at the RADIUS server group level, use the `deadtime` command in server-group configuration mode. To set deadtime to 0, use the `no` form of this command.

```
 deadtime minutes
 no deadtime
```

**Syntax Description**

| minutes | Length of time, in minutes, for which a RADIUS server is skipped over by transaction requests, up to a maximum of 1440 (24 hours). The range is from 1 to 1440. |

**Command Default**

Deadtime is set to 0.

**Command Modes**

Server-group configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

The value of the deadtime set in the server groups overrides the deadtime that is configured globally. If the deadtime is omitted from the server group configuration, the value is inherited from the master list. If the server group is not configured, the default value of 0 applies to all servers in the group. If the deadtime is set to 0, no servers are marked dead.

**Examples**

The following example specifies a one-minute deadtime for RADIUS server group `group1` when it has failed to respond to authentication requests for the `deadtime` command:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa group server radius group1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server 1.1.1.1 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server 2.2.2.2 auth-port 2000 acct-port 2001
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# deadtime 1
## Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>aaa group server tacacs+</code>&lt;br&gt;on page 22</td>
<td>Groups different RADIUS server hosts into distinct lists and distinct methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>radius-server dead-criteria time</code>&lt;br&gt;on page 46</td>
<td>Forces one or both of the criteria that is used to mark a RADIUS server as dead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>radius-server deadtime</code>&lt;br&gt;on page 50</td>
<td>Defines the length of time in minutes for a RADIUS server to remain marked dead.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To create a description of a task group or user group during configuration, use the `description` command in task group configuration or user group configuration mode. To delete a task group description or user group description, use the `no` form of this command.

```
description string
no description
```

**Syntax Description**

```
string  Character string describing the task group or user group.
```

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Task group configuration
User group configuration

**Command History**

```
Release       Modification
------------- ----------------
Release 2.0    This command was introduced.
```

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `description` command inside the task or user group configuration submode to define a description for the task or user group, respectively.

**Task ID**

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

**Examples**

The following example shows the creation of a task group description:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# taskgroup alpha
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-tg)# description this is a sample taskgroup
```

The following example shows the creation of a user group description:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# usergroup alpha
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ug)# description this is a sample user group
```
## Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>taskgroup, on page 112</td>
<td>Accesses task group configuration mode and configures a task group by associating it with a set of task IDs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usergroup, on page 120</td>
<td>Accesses user group configuration mode and configures a user group by associating it with a set of task groups.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
group (AAA)

To add a user to a group, use the `group` command in username configuration mode. To remove the user from a group, use the `no` form of this command.

```plaintext
group {root-system| root-lr| netadmin| sysadmin| operator| cisco-support| serviceadmin| group-name}
no group {root-system| root-lr| netadmin| sysadmin| operator| cisco-support| serviceadmin| group-name}
```

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>root-system</td>
<td>Adds the user to the predefined root-system group and provides access to commands included in the cisco-support group. Only users with root-system authority may use this option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>root-lr</td>
<td>Adds the user to the predefined root-lr group. Only users with root-system authority or root-lr authority may use this option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>netadmin</td>
<td>Adds the user to the predefined network administrators group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sysadmin</td>
<td>Adds the user to the predefined system administrators group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operator</td>
<td>Adds the user to the predefined operator group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cisco-support</td>
<td>Adds the user to the predefined Cisco support personnel group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serviceadmin</td>
<td>Adds the user to the predefined service administrators group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group-name</td>
<td>Adds the user to a named user group that has already been defined with the <code>usergroup</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
Starting from IOS XR 4.3.1 release, the cisco-support group is combined with the root-system group. This means a user who is part of the root-system group can also access commands that are included in the cisco-support group.

### Command Default

Username configuration

### Command Modes

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>The <code>serviceadmin</code> keyword was added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>The root-system group includes privileges for cisco-support groupd.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Usage Guidelines

The predefined group root-system may be specified only by root-system users while configuring administration. Use the `group` command in username configuration mode. To access username configuration mode, use the `username`, on page 122 command in global configuration mode.

If the `group` command is used in administration configuration mode, only root-system and cisco-support keywords can be specified.

The privileges associated with the cisco-support group are now included in the root-system group. The cisco-support group is no longer required to be used for configuration.

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following example shows how to assign the user group operator to the user named user1:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# username user1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-un)# group operator
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>password (AAA), on page 44</td>
<td>Creates a login password for a user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usergroup, on page 120</td>
<td>Configures a user group and associates it with a set of task groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username, on page 122</td>
<td>Accesses username configuration mode, configures a new user with a username, and establishes a password and permissions for that user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**inherit taskgroup**

To enable a task group to derive permissions from another task group, use the `inherit taskgroup` command in task group configuration mode.

```
inherit taskgroup {taskgroup-name| netadmin| operator| sysadmin| cisco-support| root-lr| root-system| serviceadmin}
```

### Syntax Description

- **taskgroup-name**: Name of the task group from which permissions are inherited.
- **netadmin**: Inherits permissions from the network administrator task group.
- **operator**: Inherits permissions from the operator task group.
- **sysadmin**: Inherits permissions from the system administrator task group.
- **cisco-support**: Inherits permissions from the cisco support task group.
- **root-lr**: Inherits permissions from the root-lr task group.
- **root-system**: Inherits permissions from the root system task group.
- **serviceadmin**: Inherits permissions from the service administrators task group.

### Command Default

None

### Command Modes

Task group configuration

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>The <code>serviceadmin</code> keyword was added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

Use the `inherit taskgroup` command to inherit the permissions (task IDs) from one task group into another task group. Any changes made to the task group from which they are inherited are reflected immediately in the group from which they are inherited.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

In the following example, the permissions of task group tg2 are inherited by task group tg1:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# taskgroup tg1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-tg)# inherit taskgroup tg2
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-tg)# end
```
inherit usergroup

To enable a user group to derive characteristics of another user group, use the `inherit usergroup` command in user group configuration mode.

`inherit usergroup usergroup-name`

**Syntax Description**

| **usergroup-name** | Name of the user group from which permissions are to be inherited. |

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

User group configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Release</strong></th>
<th><strong>Modification</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Each user group is associated with a set of task groups applicable to the users in that group. A task group is defined by a collection of task IDs. Task groups contain task ID lists for each class of action. The task permissions for a user are derived (at the start of the EXEC or XML session) from the task groups associated with the user groups to which that user belongs.

User groups support inheritance from other user groups. Use the `inherit usergroup` command to copy permissions (task ID attributes) from one user group to another user group. The “destination” user group inherits the properties of the inherited group and forms a union of all task IDs specified in those groups. For example, when user group A inherits user group B, the task map of the user group A is a union of that of A and B. Cyclic inclusions are detected and rejected. User groups cannot inherit properties from predefined groups, such as root-system users, root-sdr users, netadmin users, and so on. Any changes made to the usergroup from which it is inherited are reflected immediately in the group from which it is inherited.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Task ID</strong></th>
<th><strong>Operations</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to enable the purchasing user group to inherit properties from the sales user group:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# **usergroup purchasing**
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ug)# **inherit usergroup sales**

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>description (AAA), on page 30</td>
<td>Creates a description of a task group in task group configuration mode, or creates a description of a user group in user group configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taskgroup, on page 112</td>
<td>Configures a task group to be associated with a set of task IDs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usergroup, on page 120</td>
<td>Configures a user group to be associated with a set of task groups.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
key (RADIUS)

To specify the authentication and encryption key that is used between the router and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server, use the `key (RADIUS)` command in RADIUS server-group private configuration mode.

```
key {0 clear-text-key| 7 encrypted-key| clear-text-key}
no key {0 clear-text-key| 7 encrypted-key| clear-text-key}
```

**Syntax Description**

- `0 clear-text-key` Specifies an unencrypted (cleartext) shared key.
- `7 encrypted-key` Specifies an encrypted shared key.
- `clear-text-key` Specifies an unencrypted (cleartext) user password.

**Command Default**

For submode `key` commands, the default is to use the `radius-server key` command in global configuration mode, if defined. If the global key is also not defined, the configuration is not complete.

**Command Modes**

RADIUS server-group private configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to set the encrypted key to anykey:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa group server radius group1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ag-radius)# server-private 10.1.1.1 auth-port 300
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ag-radius-private)# key anykey
```
Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server tacacs+, on page 22</td>
<td>Groups different RADIUS server hosts into distinct lists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius-server key, on page 52</td>
<td>Sets the authentication and encryption key for all RADIUS communications between the router and the RADIUS daemon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retransmit (RADIUS), on page 60</td>
<td>Specifies the number of times a RADIUS request is resent to a server if the server is not responding or is responding slowly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server-private (RADIUS), on page 68</td>
<td>Configures the IP address of the private RADIUS server for the group server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout (RADIUS), on page 114</td>
<td>Specifies the number of seconds the router waits for the RADIUS server to reply before retransmitting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
key (TACACS+)

To specify an authentication and encryption key shared between the AAA server and the TACACS+ server, use the `key (TACACS+)` command in TACACS host configuration mode. To disable this feature, use the `no` form of this command.

```
key {0 clear-text-key | 7 encrypted-key | auth-key}
no key {0 clear-text-key | 7 encrypted-key | auth-key}
```

**Syntax Description**

- `0 clear-text-key` Specifies an unencrypted (cleartext) shared key.
- `7 encrypted-key` Specifies an encrypted shared key.
- `auth-key` Specifies the unencrypted key between the AAA server and the TACACS+ server.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

TACACS host configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

The TACACS+ packets are encrypted using the key, and it must match the key used by the TACACS+ daemon. Specifying this key overrides the key set by the `tacacs-server key` command for this server only.

The key is used to encrypt the packets that are going from TACACS+, and it should match with the key configured on the external TACACS+ server so that the packets are decrypted properly. If a mismatch occurs, the result fails.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The following example shows how to set the encrypted key to anykey:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# tacacs-server host 209.165.200.226
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-tacacs-host)# key anykey
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tacacs-server host, on page 102</td>
<td>Specifies a TACACS+ host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tacacs-server key, on page 105</td>
<td>Globally sets the authentication encryption key used for all TACACS+ communications between the router and the TACACS+ daemon.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### login authentication

To enable authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authentication for logins, use the `login authentication` command in line template configuration mode. To return to the default authentication settings, use the `no` form of this command.

```
login authentication {default|list-name}
no login authentication
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>default</code></td>
<td>Default list of AAA authentication methods, as set by the <code>aaa authentication login</code> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>list-name</code></td>
<td>Name of the method list used for authenticating. You specify this list with the <code>aaa authentication login</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

This command uses the default set with the `aaa authentication login` command.

**Command Modes**

Line template configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

The `login authentication` command is a per-line command used with AAA that specifies the name of a list of AAA authentication methods to try at login.

*Caution*

If you use a `list-name` value that was not configured with the `aaa authentication login` command, the configuration is rejected.

Entering the `no` form of the `login authentication` command has the same effect as entering the command with the `default` keyword.

Before issuing this command, create a list of authentication processes by using the `aaa authentication login` command.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tty-access</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows that the default AAA authentication is used for the line template `template1`:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# line template template1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-line)# login authentication default
```

The following example shows that the AAA authentication list called `list1` is used for the line template `template2`:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# line template template2
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-line)# login authentication list1
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>aaa authentication</code></td>
<td>Creates a method list for authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
password (AAA)

To create a login password for a user, use the `password` command in username configuration mode or line template configuration mode. To remove the password, use the `no` form of this command.

```
password {0|7} password
no password {0|7} password
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that an unencrypted clear-text password follows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Specifies that an encrypted password follows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Specifies the unencrypted password text to be entered by the user to log in, for example, “lab”. If encryption is configured, the password is not visible to the user. Can be up to 253 characters in length.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**
The password is in unencrypted clear text.

**Command Modes**
Username configuration
Line template configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
You can specify one of two types of passwords: encrypted or clear text.

When an EXEC process is started on a line that has password protection, the process prompts for the password. If the user enters the correct password, the process issues the prompt. The user can try three times to enter a password before the process exits and returns the terminal to the idle state.

Passwords are two-way encrypted and should be used for applications such as PPP that need decryptable passwords that can be decrypted.

**Note**
The `show running-config` command always displays the clear-text login password in encrypted form when the `0` option is used.
### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows how to establish the unencrypted password `pwd1` for user. The output from the `show` command displays the password in its encrypted form.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# username user1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-un)# password 0 pwd1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-un)# commit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-un)# show running-config
Building configuration...
username user1
    password 7 141B1309
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>group (AAA), on page 32</td>
<td>Adds a user to a group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usergroup, on page 120</td>
<td>Accesses user group configuration mode and configures a user group, associating it with a set of task groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username, on page 122</td>
<td>Accesses username configuration mode and configures a new user with a username, establishing a password and granting permissions for that user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line</td>
<td>Enters line template configuration mode for the specified line template. For more information, see the Cisco IOS XR System Management Command Reference.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
radius-server dead-criteria time

To specify the minimum amount of time, in seconds, that must elapse from the time that the router last received a valid packet from the RADIUS server to the time the server is marked as dead, use the `radius-server dead-criteria time` command in global configuration mode. To disable the criteria that were set, use the `no` form of this command.

```
radius-server dead-criteria time seconds
no radius-server dead-criteria time seconds
```

**Syntax Description**

- `seconds` Length of time, in seconds. The range is from 1 to 120 seconds. If the `seconds` argument is not configured, the number of seconds ranges from 10 to 60, depending on the transaction rate of the server.

  **Note** The time criterion must be met for the server to be marked as dead.

**Command Default**

If this command is not used, the number of seconds ranges from 10 to 60 seconds, depending on the transaction rate of the server.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

- **Note** If you configure the `radius-server dead-criteria time` command before the `radius-server deadtime` command, the `radius-server dead-criteria time` command may not be enforced.

  If a packet has not been received since the router booted and there is a timeout, the time criterion is treated as though it were met.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The following example shows how to establish the time for the dead-criteria conditions for a RADIUS server to be marked as dead for the `radius-server dead-criteria time` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# radius-server dead-criteria time 5
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>radius-server dead-criteria tries, on page 48</td>
<td>Specifies the number of consecutive timeouts that must occur on the router before the RADIUS server is marked as dead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius-server deadtime, on page 50</td>
<td>Defines the length of time, in minutes, for a RADIUS server to remain marked dead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show radius dead-criteria, on page 87</td>
<td>Displays information for the dead-server detection criteria.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
radius-server dead-criteria tries

To specify the number of consecutive timeouts that must occur on the router before the RADIUS server is marked as dead, use the `radius-server dead-criteria tries` command. To disable the criteria that were set, use the `no` form of this command.

```
radius-server dead-criteria tries
no radius-server dead-criteria tries
```

### Syntax Description

- **tries**: Number of timeouts from 1 to 100. If the `tries` argument is not configured, the number of consecutive timeouts ranges from 10 to 100, depending on the transaction rate of the server and the number of configured retransmissions.

  **Note**: The tries criterion must be met for the server to be marked as dead.

### Command Default

If this command is not used, the number of consecutive timeouts ranges from 10 to 100, depending on the transaction rate of the server and the number of configured retransmissions.

### Command Modes

Global configuration

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

If the server performs both authentication and accounting, both types of packet are included in the number. Improperly constructed packets are counted as though they were timeouts. All transmissions, including the initial transmit and all retransmits, are counted.

**Note**: If you configure the `radius-server dead-criteria tries` command before the `radius-server deadtime` command, the `radius-server dead-criteria tries` command may not be enforced.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The following example shows how to establish the number of tries for the dead-criteria conditions for a RADIUS server to be marked as dead for the `radius-server dead-criteria tries` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# radius-server dead-criteria tries 4
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>radius-server dead-criteria time</code>, on page 46</td>
<td>Defines the length of time in seconds that must elapse from the time that the router last received a valid packet from the RADIUS server to the time the server is marked as dead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>radius-server deadtime</code>, on page 50</td>
<td>Defines the length of time, in minutes, for a RADIUS server to remain marked dead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show radius dead-criteria</code>, on page 87</td>
<td>Displays information for the dead-server detection criteria.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To improve RADIUS response times when some servers are unavailable and cause the unavailable servers to be skipped immediately, use the `radius-server deadtime` command in global configuration mode. To set deadtime to 0, use the `no` form of this command.

```
radius-server deadtime minutes
```

**Syntax Description**
- `minutes`: Length of time, in minutes, for which a RADIUS server is skipped over by transaction requests, up to a maximum of 1440 (24 hours). The range is from 1 to 1440. The default value is 0.

**Command Default**
- Dead time is set to 0.

**Command Modes**
- Global configuration

**Command History**
- Release 3.3.0: This command was introduced.

**Usage Guidelines**
- A RADIUS server marked as dead is skipped by additional requests for the duration of minutes unless all other servers are marked dead and there is no rollover method.

**Examples**
- The following example specifies five minutes of deadtime for RADIUS servers that fail to respond to authentication requests for the `radius-server deadtime` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CP00:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CP00:router(config)# radius-server deadtime 5
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>deadtime (server-group configuration)</code>, on page 28</td>
<td>Configures the deadtime value at the RADIUS server group level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>radius-server dead-criteria time</code>, on page 46</td>
<td>Forces one or both of the criteria that is used to mark a RADIUS server as dead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show radius dead-criteria</code>, on page 87</td>
<td>Displays information for the dead-server detection criteria.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
radius-server key

To set the authentication and encryption key for all RADIUS communications between the router and the RADIUS daemon, use the `radius-server key` command in global configuration mode. To disable the key, use the `no` form of this command.

```
radius-server key {0 clear-text-key| 7 encrypted-key| clear-text-key}
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 clear-text-key</td>
<td>Specifies an unencrypted (cleartext) shared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 encrypted-key</td>
<td>Specifies a encrypted shared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear-text-key</td>
<td>Specifies an unencrypted (cleartext) shared key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

The authentication and encryption key is disabled.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

The key entered must match the key used on the RADIUS server. All leading spaces are ignored, but spaces within and at the end of the key are used. If you use spaces in your key, do not enclose the key in quotation marks unless the quotation marks themselves are part of the key.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to set the cleartext key to “samplekey:”

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# radius-server key 0 samplekey
```

The following example shows how to set the encrypted shared key to “anykey:”

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# radius-server key 7 anykey
```
Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>key (RADIUS), on page 38</td>
<td>Specifies the authentication and encryption key that is used between the router and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server-private (RADIUS), on page 68</td>
<td>Configures the IP address of the private RADIUS server for the group server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
radius-server retransmit

To specify the number of times the Cisco IOS XR software retransmits a packet to a server before giving up, use the `radius-server retransmit` command in Global Configuration mode. To disable retransmission, use the `no` form of this command.

```
radius-server retransmit retries
```

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>retries</td>
<td>Maximum number of retransmission attempts. The range is from 1 to 100. Default is 3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Command Default

The RADIUS servers are retried three times, or until a response is received.

### Command Modes

Global Configuration mode

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

The RADIUS client tries all servers, allowing each one to time out before increasing the retransmit count.

### Examples

The following example shows how to specify a retransmit counter value of five times:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# radius-server retransmit 5
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>radius-server key</code>, on page 52</td>
<td>Sets the authentication and encryption key for all RADIUS communications between the router and the RADIUS daemon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retransmit (RADIUS), on page 60</td>
<td>Specifies the number of times a RADIUS request is resent to a server if the server is not responding or is responding slowly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server-private (RADIUS), on page 68</td>
<td>Configures the IP address of the private RADIUS server for the group server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**radius-server timeout**

To set the interval for which a router waits for a server host to reply before timing out, use the `radius-server timeout` command in Global Configuration mode. To restore the default, use the `no` form of this command.

```
radius-server timeout seconds
```

**Syntax Description**

- **seconds**: Number that specifies the timeout interval, in seconds. Range is from 1 to 1000.

**Command Default**

5 seconds

**Command Modes**

Global Configuration mode

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `radius-server timeout` command to set the number of seconds a router waits for a server host to reply before timing out.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to change the interval timer to 10 seconds:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# radius-server timeout 10
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>radius-server key</code>, on page 52</td>
<td>Sets the authentication and encryption key for all RADIUS communications between the router and the RADIUS daemon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>server-private (RADIUS)</code>, on page 68</td>
<td>Configures the IP address of the private RADIUS server for the group server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>timeout (RADIUS), on page 114</code></td>
<td>Specifies the number of seconds the router waits for the RADIUS server to reply before retransmitting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
radius source-interface

To force RADIUS to use the IP address of a specified interface or subinterface for all outgoing RADIUS packets, use the `radius source-interface` command in Global Configuration mode. To prevent only the specified interface from being the default and not from being used for all outgoing RADIUS packets, use the `no` form of this command.

```
radius source-interface interface-name [vrf vrf-id]
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>interface-name</td>
<td>Name of the interface that RADIUS uses for all of its outgoing packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vrf vrf-id</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the assigned VRF.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

If a specific source interface is not configured, or the interface is down or does not have an IP address configured, the system selects an IP address.

**Command Modes**

Global Configuration mode

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>The <code>vrf</code> keyword was added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `radius source-interface` command to set the IP address of the specified interface or subinterface for all outgoing RADIUS packets. This address is used as long as the interface or subinterface is in the up state. In this way, the RADIUS server can use one IP address entry for every network access client instead of maintaining a list of IP addresses.

The specified interface or subinterface must have an IP address associated with it. If the specified interface or subinterface does not have an IP address or is in the down state, then RADIUS reverts to the default. To avoid this, add an IP address to the interface or subinterface or bring the interface to the up state.

The `radius source-interface` command is especially useful in cases in which the router has many interfaces or subinterfaces and you want to ensure that all RADIUS packets from a particular router have the same IP address.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following example shows how to make RADIUS use the IP address of subinterface s2 for all outgoing RADIUS packets:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# radius source-interface Loopback 10 vrf wal-mart

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server tacacs+, on page 22</td>
<td>Groups different RADIUS server hosts into distinct lists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius-server key, on page 52</td>
<td>Sets the authentication and encryption key for all RADIUS communications between the router and the RADIUS daemon.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
retransmit (RADIUS)

To specify the number of times a RADIUS request is resent to a server if the server is not responding or is responding slowly, use the `retransmit` command in RADIUS server-group private configuration mode.

```
retransmit retries
no retransmit retries
```

**Syntax Description**

- `retries` The `retries` argument specifies the retransmit value. The range is from 1 to 100. If no retransmit value is specified, the global value is used.

**Command Default**

The default value is 3.

**Command Modes**

RADIUS server-group private configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Examples**

The following example shows how to set the retransmit value:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa group server radius group1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.1.1.1 auth-port 300
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius-private)# retransmit 100
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server tacacs+</td>
<td>Groups different RADIUS server hosts into distinct lists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server-private (RADIUS), on page 68</td>
<td>Configures the IP address of the private RADIUS server for the group server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout (RADIUS), on page 114</td>
<td>Specifies the number of seconds the router waits for the RADIUS server to reply before retransmitting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
secret

To configure an MD5-encrypted secret to be associated with an encrypted username, use the `secret` command in username configuration mode or line template configuration mode. To remove the secure secret, use the `no` form of this command.

```
secret {0|5} secret-login
no secret {0|5} secret-login
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that an unencrypted (clear-text) password follows. The password will be encrypted for storage in the configuration using an MD5 encryption algorithm. Otherwise, the password is not encrypted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Specifies that an encrypted MD5 password (secret) follows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- `secret-login`: Text string in alphanumeric characters that is stored as the MD5-encrypted password entered by the user in association with the user’s login ID.
- Can be up to 253 characters in length.
- **Note** The characters entered must conform to MD5 encryption standards.

**Command Default**

No password is specified.

**Command Modes**

- Username configuration
- Line template configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>The <code>password</code> argument was replaced with the <code>secret-login</code> argument.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Cisco IOS XR software allows you to configure Message Digest 5 (MD5) encryption for username logins and passwords. MD5 encryption is a one-way hash function that makes reversal of an encrypted password impossible, providing strong encryption protection. Using MD5 encryption, you cannot retrieve clear-text passwords. Therefore, MD5 encrypted passwords cannot be used with protocols that require the clear-text password to be retrievable, such as Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP).

You can specify one of two types of secure secret IDs: encrypted (5) or clear text (0). If you do not select either 0 or 5, the clear-text password you enter is not be encrypted.
When an EXEC process is started on a line that has password protection, the process prompts for the secret. If the user enters the correct secret, the process issues the prompt. The user can try entering the secret thrice before the terminal returns to the idle state.

Secrets are one-way encrypted and should be used for login activities that do not require a decryptable secret.

To verify that MD5 password encryption has been enabled, use the `show running-config` command. If the “username name secret 5” line appears in the command output, enhanced password security is enabled.

Note
The `show running-config` command does not display the login password in clear text when the 0 option is used to specify an unencrypted password. See the “Examples” section.

### Examples

The following example shows how to establish the clear-text secret “lab” for the user `user2`:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# username user2
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-un)# secret 0 lab
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-un)# commit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-un)# show running-config
Building configuration...
username user2
secret 5 $1$DTmd$q7C6fhzje7Cc7Xzmu2Frx1
!
end
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>group (AAA), on page 32</td>
<td>Adds a user to a group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password (AAA), on page 44</td>
<td>Creates a login password for a user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usergroup, on page 120</td>
<td>Accesses user group configuration mode and configures a user group, associating it with a set of task groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username, on page 122</td>
<td>Accesses username configuration mode and configures a new user with a username, establishing a password and granting permissions for that user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
server (RADIUS)

To associate a particular RADIUS server with a defined server group, use the `server` command in RADIUS server-group configuration mode. To remove the associated server from the server group, use the `no` form of this command.

```
server ip-address [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number]
no server ip-address [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number]
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ip-address</code></td>
<td>IP address of the RADIUS server host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>auth-port</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) destination port for authentication requests. The <code>port-number</code> argument specifies the port number for authentication requests. The host is not used for authentication if this value is set to 0. Default is 1645.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>acct-port</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the UDP destination port for accounting requests. The <code>port-number</code> argument specifies the port number for accounting requests. The host is not used for accounting services if this value is set to 0. Default is 1646.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

If no port attributes are defined, the defaults are as follows:

- Authentication port: 1645
- Accounting port: 1646

**Command Modes**

RADIUS server-group configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `server` command to associate a particular RADIUS server with a defined server group.

There are two different ways in which you can identify a server, depending on the way you want to offer AAA services. You can identify the server simply by using its IP address, or you can identify multiple host instances or entries using the optional `auth-port` and `acct-port` keywords.

When you use the optional keywords, the network access server identifies RADIUS security servers and host instances associated with a group server based on their IP address and specific UDP port numbers. The combination of the IP address and UDP port number creates a unique identifier, allowing different ports to be individually defined as RADIUS host entries providing a specific AAA service. If two different host entries
on the same RADIUS server are configured for the same service, for example, accounting, the second host entry configured acts as an automatic switchover backup to the first one. Using this example, if the first host entry fails to provide accounting services, the network access server tries the second host entry configured on the same device for accounting services. (The RADIUS host entries are tried in the order they are configured.)

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows how to use two different host entries on the same RADIUS server that are configured for the same services—authentication and accounting. The second host entry configured acts as switchover backup to the first one.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa group server radius group1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server 1.1.1.1 auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server 2.2.2.2 auth-port 2000 acct-port 2001
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server radius, on page 20</td>
<td>Groups different RADIUS server hosts into distinct lists and distinct methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deadtime (server-group configuration), on page 28</td>
<td>Configures the deadtime value at the RADIUS server group level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server-private (RADIUS), on page 68</td>
<td>Configures the IP address of the private RADIUS server for the group server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
server (TACACS+)

To associate a particular TACACS+ server with a defined server group, use the `server` command in TACACS+ server-group configuration mode. To remove the associated server from the server group, use the `no` form of this command.

```
server {hostname|ip-address}
no server {hostname|ip-address}
```

**Syntax Description**

- `hostname`: Character string used to name the server host.
- `ip-address`: IP address of the server host.

**Command Default**
None

**Command Modes**
TACACS+ server-group configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
The server need not be accessible during configuration. Later, you can reference the configured server group from the method lists used to configure authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA).

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**
The following example shows how to associate the TACACS+ server with the IP address 192.168.60.15 with the server group tac1:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ tac1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-aaa)# server 192.168.60.15
```
### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>aaa group server tacacs+</code>, on page 22</td>
<td>Groups different TACACS+ server hosts into distinct lists.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
server-private (RADIUS)

To configure the IP address of the private RADIUS server for the group server, use the `server-private` command in RADIUS server-group configuration mode. To remove the associated private server from the AAA group server, use the `no` form of this command.

```
server-private ip-address [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number] [timeout seconds] [retransmit retries] [key string]
no server-private ip-address [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number]
```

**Syntax Description**

- `ip-address`  
  IP address of the RADIUS server host.

- `auth-port`  
  (Optional) Specifies the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) destination port for authentication requests. The `port-number` argument specifies the port number for authentication requests. The host is not used for authentication if this value is set to 0. The default value is 1645.

- `acct-port`  
  (Optional) Specifies the UDP destination port for accounting requests. The `port-number` argument specifies the port number for accounting requests. The host is not used for accounting services if this value is set to 0. The default value is 1646.

- `timeout`  
  (Optional) Specifies the number of seconds the router waits for the RADIUS server to reply before retransmitting. The setting overrides the global value of the `radius-server timeout` command. If no timeout is specified, the global value is used. The `seconds` argument specifies the timeout value in seconds. The range is from 1 to 1000. If no timeout is specified, the global value is used.

- `retransmit`  
  (Optional) Specifies the number of times a RADIUS request is resent to a server if the server is not responding or is responding slowly. The setting overrides the global setting of the `radius-server transmit` command. The `retries` argument specifies the retransmit value. The range is from 1 to 100. If no retransmit value is specified, the global value is used.

- `key`  
  (Optional) Specifies the authentication and encryption key that is used between the router and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. This key overrides the global setting of the `radius-server key` command. If no key string is specified, the global value is used.

**Command Default**

If no port attributes are defined, the defaults are as follows:

- Authentication port: 1645
- Accounting port: 1646
Command Modes

RADIUS server-group configuration

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines

Use the `server-private` command to associate a particular private server with a defined server group. Possible overlapping of IP addresses between VRF instances are permitted. Private servers (servers with private addresses) can be defined within the server group and remain hidden from other groups, while the servers in the global pool (for example, default radius server group) can still be referred to by IP addresses and port numbers. Thus, the list of servers in server groups includes references to the hosts in the configuration and the definitions of private servers.

Both the `auth-port` and `acct-port` keywords enter RADIUS server-group private configuration mode.

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following example shows how to define the group1 RADIUS group server, to associate private servers with it, and to enter RADIUS server-group private configuration mode:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa group server radius group1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.1.1.1 timeout 5
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.1.1.1 retransmit 3
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.1.1.1 key coke
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.1.1.1 auth-port 300
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.2.2.2 timeout 5
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.2.2.2 retransmit 3
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.2.2.2 key coke
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.2.2.2 auth-port 300
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius-private)#
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server tacacs+, on page 22</td>
<td>Groups different RADIUS server hosts into distinct lists and distinct methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius-server key, on page 52</td>
<td>Sets the authentication and encryption key for all RADIUS communication between the router and the RADIUS daemon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius-server retransmit, on page 54</td>
<td>Specifies the number of times the Cisco IOS XR software retransmits a packet to a server before giving up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius-server timeout, on page 56</td>
<td>Sets the interval for which a router waits for a server host to reply before timing out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key (RADIUS), on page 38</td>
<td>Specifies the authentication and encryption key that is used between the router and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retransmit (RADIUS), on page 60</td>
<td>Specifies the number of times a RADIUS request is resent to a server if the server is not responding or is responding slowly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout (RADIUS), on page 114</td>
<td>Specifies the number of seconds the router waits for the RADIUS server to reply before retransmitting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vrf (RADIUS), on page 128</td>
<td>Configures the Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an AAA RADIUS server group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
server-private (TACACS+)

To configure the IP address of the private TACACS+ server for the group server, use the `server-private` command in TACACS+ server-group configuration mode. To remove the associated private server from the AAA group server, use the `no` form of this command.

```
server-private {hostname | ip-address} [port port-number] [timeout seconds] [key string]
no server-private {hostname | ip-address}
```

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>hostname</code></td>
<td>Character string used to name the server host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ip-address</code></td>
<td>IP address of the TACACS+ server host. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>port port-number</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies a server port number. This option overrides the default, which is port 49. Valid port numbers range from 1 to 65535.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>timeout seconds</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies, in seconds, a timeout value that sets the length of time the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server waits to receive a response from the TACACS+ server. This option overrides the global timeout value set with the <code>tacacs-server timeout</code> command for only this server. The range is from 1 to 1000. The default is 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>key string</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the authentication and encryption key that is used between the router and the TACACS+ daemon running on the TACACS+ server. This key overrides the global setting of the <code>tacacs-server key</code> command. If no key string is specified, the global value is used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Command Default

The `port-name` argument, if not specified, defaults to the standard port 49.

The `seconds` argument, if not specified, defaults to 5 seconds.

### Command Modes

TACACS+ server-group configuration

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 4.1.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 5.3.0</td>
<td>IPv6 support was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

Use the `server-private` command to associate a particular private server with a defined server group. Possible overlapping of IP addresses between VRF instances are permitted. Private servers (servers with private addresses) can be defined within the server group and remain hidden from other groups, while the servers in
the global pool (for example, default tacacs+ server group) can still be referred by IP addresses and port numbers. Therefore, the list of servers in server groups includes references to the hosts in the global configuration and the definitions of private servers.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

This example shows how to define the myserver TACACS+ group server, to associate private servers with it, and to enter TACACS+ server-group private configuration mode:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ myserver
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-tacacs+)# server-private 10.1.1.1 timeout 5
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-tacacs+)# server-private 10.1.1.1 key a_secret
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-tacacs-private)# exit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-tacacs+)# server-private 10.2.2.2 timeout 5
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-tacacs+)# server-private 10.2.2.2 key coke
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-tacacs+)# server-private 10.2.2.2 port 300
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-tacacs-private)#
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server tacacs+, on page 22</td>
<td>Groups different TACACS+ server hosts into distinct lists and distinct methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tacacs-server key, on page 105</td>
<td>Sets the authentication encryption key used for all TACACS+ communications between the router and the TACACS+ daemon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tacacs-server timeout, on page 107</td>
<td>Sets the interval for which a router waits for a server host to reply before timing out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key (TACACS+), on page 40</td>
<td>Specifies an authentication and encryption key shared between the AAA server and the TACACS+ server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout (TACACS+), on page 116</td>
<td>Specifies a timeout value that sets the length of time the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server waits to receive a response from the TACACS+ server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vrf (TACACS+), on page 130</td>
<td>Configures the Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an AAA TACACS+ server group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show aaa

To display information about an Internet Key Exchange (IKE) Security Protocol group, user group, local user, login traces, or task group; to list all task IDs associated with all IKE groups, user groups, local users, or task groups in the system; or to list all task IDs for a specified IKE group, user group, local user, or task group, use the show aaa command.

```
show aaa {ikegroup ikegroup-name| login trace| usergroup [ usergroup-name ]|trace|userdb [ username ]|task supported| taskgroup [root-lr|netadmin|operator|sysadmin|root-system|service-admin|cisco-support] [taskgroup-name]}
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Keyword</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ikegroup</td>
<td>Displays details for all IKE groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ikegroup-name</td>
<td>(Optional) IKE group whose details are to be displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>login trace</td>
<td>Displays trace data for login subsystem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usergroup</td>
<td>Displays details for all user groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>root-lr</td>
<td>(Optional) Usergroup name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>netadmin</td>
<td>(Optional) Usergroup name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operator</td>
<td>(Optional) Usergroup name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sysadmin</td>
<td>(Optional) Usergroup name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>root-system</td>
<td>(Optional) Usergroup name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cisco-support</td>
<td>(Optional) Usergroup name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usergroup-name</td>
<td>(Optional) Usergroup name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trace</td>
<td>Displays trace data for AAA subsystem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userdb</td>
<td>Displays details for all local users and the usergroups to which each user belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>(Optional) User whose details are to be displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>task supported</td>
<td>Displays all AAA task IDs available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taskgroup</td>
<td>Displays details for all task groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taskgroup-name</td>
<td>(Optional) Task group whose details are to be displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**  
For taskgroup keywords, see optional usergroup name keyword list.
show aaa

**Command Default**
Details for all user groups, or all local users, or all task groups are listed if no argument is entered.

**Command Modes**
EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>The <code>ikegroup</code> keyword was added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.5.0</td>
<td>The <code>show task supported</code> command was removed and its topic was added as a keyword for the <code>show aaa</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
Use the `show aaa` command to list details for all IKE groups, user groups, local users, AAA task IDs, or task groups in the system. Use the optional `ikegroup-name`, `usergroup-name`, `username`, or `taskgroup-name` argument to display the details for a specified IKE group, user group, user, or task group, respectively.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**
The following sample output is from the `show aaa` command, using the `ikegroup` keyword:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show aaa ikegroup
IKE Group ike-group
    Max-Users = 50
IKE Group ikeuser
    Group-Key = test-password
    Default Domain = cisco.com
IKE Group ike-user
```

The following sample output is from the `show aaa` command, using the `usergroup` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show aaa usergroup operator
User group 'operator' inherits from task group 'operator'
User group 'operator' has the following combined set of task IDs (including all inherited groups):
Task: basic-services : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: cdp : READ
Task: diag : READ
Task: ext-access : READ EXECUTE
Task: logging : READ
```
The following sample output is from the `show aaa` command, using the `taskgroup` keyword for a task group named `netadmin`:

```plaintext
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show aaa taskgroup netadmin

Task group 'netadmin'

Task group 'netadmin' has the following combined set of task IDs (including all inherited groups):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Permissions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acl</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admin</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ancp</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atm</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basic-services</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bfd</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bgp</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boot</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bundle</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cdp</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cef</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cgn</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>config-mgmt</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>config-services</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diag</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drivers</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dwdm</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eem</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elgrp</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ethernet-services</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ext-access</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fabric</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fault-mgr</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filesystem</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>firewall</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fr</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hdic</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host-services</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hsrp</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inventory</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip-services</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipv4</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipv6</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isis</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l2vpn</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>li</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logging</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lpts</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitor</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpls-ldp</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpls-static</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mpls-te</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multicast</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>netflow</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>network</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ospf</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ouni</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pkg-mgmt</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pos-dpt</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppp</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qos</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rib</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rip</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>root-lr</td>
<td>READ, (reserved)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>route-map</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>route-policy</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sbc</td>
<td>READ, WRITE, EXECUTE, DEBUG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
show aaa

Task:    snmp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:    sonet-adm : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:    static : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:    sysmgr : READ
Task:    system : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:    transport : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:    tty-access : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:    tunnel : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:    universal : READ (reserved)
Task:    vlan : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:    vrrp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG

The following sample output is from the show aaa command, using the \texttt{taskgroup} keyword for an operator.

The task group operator has the following combined set of task IDs, which includes all inherited groups:

Task:    basic-services : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:    cdp : READ
Task:    diag : READ
Task:    ext-access : READ EXECUTE
Task:    logging : READ

The following sample output is from the show aaa command, using the \texttt{taskgroup} keyword for a root system.

The task-group root system has the following combined set of task IDs, which includes all inherited groups:

Task:      aaa : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      acl : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      admin : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      atm : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      basic-services : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      cdp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      diag : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      ext-access : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      fabric : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      fault-mgr : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      filesystem : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      fr : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      hdic : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      host-services : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      hsrp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      interface : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      inventory : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      ip-services : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      ipv4 : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      ipv6 : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      isis : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      logging : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      lpts : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      monitor : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      mpls-ldp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      mpls-static : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      mpls-te : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      multicast : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      netflow : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      network : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      ospf : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      oui : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      pkg-mgmt : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      pos-dpt : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      pp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      qos : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      rib : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task:      vrrp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: root-lr : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: root-system : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: route-map : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: route-policy : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: snmp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: sonet-sdh : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: static : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: system : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: transport : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: tty-access : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: tunnel : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: universal : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: vlan : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: vrrp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG

The following sample output is from **show aaa** command with the **userdb** keyword:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show aaa userdb

Username lab (admin plane)
User group root-system
User group cisco-support
Username acme
User group root-system
```

The following sample output is from the **show aaa** command, using the **task supported** keywords. Task IDs are displayed in alphabetic order.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show aaa task supported

aaa
acl
admin
atm
basic-services
cbdl
bfd
bgp
boot
bundle
cdp
cef
cisco-support
cfg-mgmt
cfg-services
crypto
diag
disallowed
drivers
eigrp
ext-access
fabric
fault-mgr
filesystem
firewall
fr
hdc
host-services
hsrp
interface
inventory
ip-services
ipv4
ipv6
isis
logging
lpts
monitor
mpls-ldp
mpls-static
mpls-te
```
show aaa

```
multicast
netflow
network
ospf
ouni
pkg-mgmt
pos-dpt
ppp
qos
rib
rip
root-lr
root-system
route-map
route-policy
sbc
snmp
sonet-sdh
static
sysmgr
system
transport
tty-access
tunnel
universal
vlan
vrrp
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show user, on page 96</td>
<td>Displays task IDs enabled for the currently logged-in user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**show radius**

To display information about the RADIUS servers that are configured in the system, use the `show radius` command.

```
show radius
```

**Syntax Description**

This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**

If no radius servers are configured, no output is displayed.

**Command Modes**

`EXEC`

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `show radius` command to display statistics for each configured RADIUS server.

**Examples**

The following sample output is for the `show radius` command:

**Output for IPV4 server**

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show radius
Global dead time: 0 minute(s)  
Number of Servers: 1  
Server: 2.3.4.5/2000/2001 is UP  
  Address family: IPv6  
  Total Deadtime: 0s Last Deadtime: 0s  
  Timeout: 5 sec, Retransmit limit: 3  
  Quarantined: No
```

**Output for IPV6 server**

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show radius
Global dead time: 0 minute(s)  
Number of Servers: 1  
Server: 2001:b::2/2000/2001 is UP
```
This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.

**Table 1: show radius Field Descriptions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>Server IP address/UDP destination port for authentication requests/UDP destination port for accounting requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timeout</td>
<td>Number of seconds the router waits for a server host to reply before timing out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retransmit limit</td>
<td>Number of times the Cisco IOS XR software searches the list of RADIUS server hosts before giving up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vrf (RADIUS), on page 128</td>
<td>Configures the Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an AAA RADIUS server group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius-server retransmit, on page 54</td>
<td>Specifies how many times Cisco IOS XR software searches the list of RADIUS server hosts before giving up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius-server timeout, on page 56</td>
<td>Sets the interval for which a router waits for a server host to reply.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show radius accounting

To obtain information and detailed statistics for the RADIUS accounting server and port, use the *show radius accounting* command in EXEC mode.

**show radius accounting**

**Syntax Description**
This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**
If no RADIUS servers are configured on the router, the output is empty. If the default values are for the counter (for example, request and pending), the values are all zero because the RADIUS server was just defined and not used yet.

**Command Modes**
EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following sample output is displayed on a per-server basis for the *show radius accounting* command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show radius accounting
Server: 12.26.25.61, port: 1813
  0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
  0 responses, 0 timeouts, 0 bad responses
  0 bad authenticators, 0 unknown types, 0 dropped
  0 ms latest rtt

Server: 12.26.49.12, port: 1813
  0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
  0 responses, 0 timeouts, 0 bad responses
  0 bad authenticators, 0 unknown types, 0 dropped
  0 ms latest rtt

Server: 12.38.28.18, port: 29199
  0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
  0 responses, 0 timeouts, 0 bad responses
  0 bad authenticators, 0 unknown types, 0 dropped
  0 ms latest rtt
```
This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.

**Table 2: show radius accounting Field Descriptions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>Server IP address/UDP destination port for authentication requests; UDP destination port for accounting requests.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting, on page 4</td>
<td>Creates a method list for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa authentication, on page 13</td>
<td>Creates a method list for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show radius authentication, on page 83</td>
<td>Obtains information and detailed statistics for the RADIUS authentication server and port.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show radius authentication

To obtain information and detailed statistics for the RADIUS authentication server and port, use the show radius authentication command.

show radius authentication

Syntax Description

This command has no keywords or arguments.

Command Default

If no RADIUS servers are configured on the router, the output is empty. If the default values are for the counter (for example, request and pending), the values are all zero because the RADIUS server was just defined and not used yet.

Command Modes

EXEC

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td></td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following sample output is for the show radius authentication command:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show radius authentication

Server: 12.26.25.61, port: 1812
0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
0 accepts, 0 rejects, 0 challenges
0 timeouts, 0 bad responses, 0 bad authenticators
0 unknown types, 0 dropped, 0 ms latest rtt

Server: 12.26.49.12, port: 1812
0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
0 accepts, 0 rejects, 0 challenges
0 timeouts, 0 bad responses, 0 bad authenticators
0 unknown types, 0 dropped, 0 ms latest rtt

Server: 12.38.28.18, port: 21099
0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
0 accepts, 0 rejects, 0 challenges
0 timeouts, 0 bad responses, 0 bad authenticators
0 unknown types, 0 dropped, 0 ms latest rtt
This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.

### Table 3: show radius authentication Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>Server IP address/UDP destination port for authentication requests; UDP destination port for accounting requests.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa accounting, on page 4</td>
<td>Creates a method list for accounting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aaa authentication, on page 13</td>
<td>Creates a method list for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show radius accounting, on page 81</td>
<td>Obtains information and detailed statistics for the RADIUS accounting server and port.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show radius client

To obtain general information about the RADIUS client on Cisco IOS XR software, use the `show radius client` command.

**show radius client**

**Syntax Description**
This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**
The default value for the counters (for example, an invalid address) is 0. The network access server (NAS) identifier is the hostname that is defined on the router.

**Command Modes**
EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
The `show radius client` command displays the authentication and accounting responses that are received from the invalid RADIUS servers, for example, unknown to the NAS. In addition, the `show radius client` command displays the hostname or NAS identifier for the RADIUS authentication client, accounting client, or both.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**
The following sample output is for the `show radius client` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show radius client
Client NAS identifier: miniq
Authentication responses from invalid addresses: 0
Accounting responses from invalid addresses: 0
This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.
```

**Table 4: show radius client Field Descriptions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Client NAS identifier</td>
<td>Identifies the NAS-identifier of the RADIUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>authentication client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server (RADIUS), on page 64</td>
<td>Associates a particular RADIUS server with a defined server group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show radius, on page 79</td>
<td>Displays information about the RADIUS servers that are configured in the system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show radius dead-criteria

To obtain information about the dead server detection criteria, use the `show radius dead-criteria` command.

```
show radius dead-criteria host ip-addr [auth-port auth-port] [acct-port acct-port]
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Element</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>host ip-addr</strong></td>
<td>Specifies the name or IP address of the configured RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>auth-port auth-port</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the authentication port for the RADIUS server. The default value is 1645.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>acct-port acct-port</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the accounting port for the RADIUS server. The default value is 1646.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

The default values for time and tries are not fixed to a single value; therefore, they are calculated and fall within a range of 10 to 60 seconds for time and 10 to 100 for tries.

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following sample output is for the `show radius dead-criteria` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show radius dead-criteria host 12.26.49.12 auth-port 11000 acct-port 11001
Server: 12.26.49.12/11000/11001
Dead criteria time: 10 sec (computed) tries: 10 (computed)
This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.
```
Table 5: show radius dead-criteria Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>Server IP address/UDP destination port for authentication requests/UDP destination port for accounting requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timeout</td>
<td>Number of seconds the router waits for a server host to reply before timing out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retransmits</td>
<td>Number of times Cisco IOS XR software searches the list of RADIUS server hosts before giving up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>radius-server dead-criteria time, on page 46</td>
<td>Forces one or both of the criteria that is used to mark a RADIUS server as dead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius-server deadtime, on page 50</td>
<td>Defines the length of time in minutes for a RADIUS server to remain marked dead.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show radius server-groups

To display information about the RADIUS server groups that are configured in the system, use the `show radius server-groups` command.

```
show radius server-groups [group-name [detail]]
```

**Syntax Description**

- `group-name` (Optional) Name of the server group. The properties are displayed.
- `detail` (Optional) Displays properties for all the server groups.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>Support was added for the <code>group-name</code> argument and <code>detail</code> keyword.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `show radius server-groups` command to display information about each configured RADIUS server group, including the group name, numbers of servers in the group, and a list of servers in the named server group. A global list of all configured RADIUS servers, along with authentication and accounting port numbers, is also displayed.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The inherited global message is displayed if no group level deadtime is defined for this group; otherwise, the group level deadtime value is displayed and this message is omitted. The following sample output is for the `show radius server-groups` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show radius server-groups
Global list of servers
  Contains 2 server(s)
```
Server 1.1.1.1/1645/1646
Server 2.2.2.2/1645/1646

Server group 'radgrp1' has 2 server(s)
Dead time: 0 minute(s) (inherited from global)
Contains 2 server(s)
  Server 1.1.1.1/1645/1646
  Server 2.2.2.2/1645/1646

Server group 'radgrp-priv' has 1 server(s)
Dead time: 0 minute(s) (inherited from global)
Contains 1 server(s)
  Server 3.3.3.3/1645/1646 [private]

The following sample output shows the properties for all the server groups in group "radgrp1:"

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show radius server-groups radgrp1 detail
Server group 'radgrp1' has 2 server(s)
  VRF default (id 0x60000000)
  Dead time: 0 minute(s) (inherited from global)
  Contains 2 server(s)
    Server 1.1.1.1/1645/1646
    Authentication:
    0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
    0 accepts, 0 rejects, 0 challenges
    0 timeouts, 0 bad responses, 0 bad authenticators
    0 unknown types, 0 dropped, 0 ms latest rtt
    Accounting:
    0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
    0 responses, 0 timeouts, 0 bad responses
    0 bad authenticators, 0 unknown types, 0 dropped
    0 ms latest rtt
  Server 2.2.2.2/1645/1646
  Authentication:
  0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
  0 accepts, 0 rejects, 0 challenges
  0 timeouts, 0 bad responses, 0 bad authenticators
  0 unknown types, 0 dropped, 0 ms latest rtt
  Accounting:
  0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
  0 responses, 0 timeouts, 0 bad responses
  0 bad authenticators, 0 unknown types, 0 dropped
  0 ms latest rtt

The following sample output shows the properties for all the server groups in detail in the group "radgrp-priv:"

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show radius server-groups radgrp-priv detail
Server group 'radgrp-priv' has 1 server(s)
  VRF default (id 0x60000000)
  Dead time: 0 minute(s) (inherited from global)
  Contains 1 server(s)
    Server 3.3.3.3/1645/1646 [private]
    Authentication:
    0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
    0 accepts, 0 rejects, 0 challenges
    0 timeouts, 0 bad responses, 0 bad authenticators
    0 unknown types, 0 dropped, 0 ms latest rtt
    Accounting:
    0 requests, 0 pending, 0 retransmits
    0 responses, 0 timeouts, 0 bad responses
    0 bad authenticators, 0 unknown types, 0 dropped
    0 ms latest rtt

This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.
Table 6: show radius server-groups Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>Server IP address/UDP destination port for authentication requests/UDP destination port for accounting requests.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vrf (RADIUS), on page 128</td>
<td>Configures the Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an AAA RADIUS server group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show tacacs

To display information about the TACACS+ servers that are configured in the system, use the **show tacacs** command.

**Syntax Description**

This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 5.3.0</td>
<td>IPv6 support was introduced on this command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the **show tacacs** command to display statistics for each configured TACACS+ server.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following is sample output from the **show tacacs** command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show tacacs
For IPv4 IP addresses:
Server:1.1.1.1/21212 opens=0 closes=0 aborts=0 errors=0
   packets in=0 packets out=0
   status=up single-connect=false
Server:2.2.2.2/21232 opens=0 closes=0 aborts=0 errors=0
   packets in=0 packets out=0
   status=up single-connect=false

For IPv6 IP addresses:
Server: 1.2.3.5/49 family = AF_INET opens=0 closes=0 aborts=0 errors=0
   packets in=0 packets out=0
   status=up single-connect=false
```

This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.
### Table 7: `show tacacs` Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>Server IP address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opens</td>
<td>Number of socket opens to the external server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>closes</td>
<td>Number of socket closes to the external server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aborts</td>
<td>Number of tacacs requests that have been aborted midway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>errors</td>
<td>Number of error replies from the external server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>packets in</td>
<td>Number of TCP packets that have been received from the external server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>packets out</td>
<td>Number of TCP packets that have been sent to the external server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**show tacacs server-groups**

To display information about the TACACS+ server groups that are configured in the system, use the `show tacacs server-groups` command.

```
show tacacs server-groups
```

**Syntax Description**

This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `show tacacs server-groups` command to display information about each configured TACACS+ server group, including the group name, numbers of servers in the group, and a list of servers in the named server group. A global list of all configured TACACS+ servers is also displayed.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following is sample output from the `show tacacs server-groups` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show tacacs server-groups
Global list of servers
 Server 12.26.25.61/23456
 Server 12.26.49.12/123456
 Server 12.26.49.12/9000
 Server 12.26.25.61/23432
 Server 5.5.5.5/23456
 Server 1.1.1.1/49
Server group 'tac100' has 1 servers
 Server 12.26.49.12
This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.
```
### Table 8: `show tacacs server-groups` Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>Server IP address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>tacacs-server host</code>, on page 102</td>
<td>Specifies a TACACS+ host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**show user**

To display all user groups and task IDs associated with the currently logged-in user, use the `show user` command.

`show user [all| authentication| group| tasks]`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>(Optional) Displays all user groups and task IDs for the currently logged-in user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication</td>
<td>(Optional) Displays authentication method parameters for the currently logged-in user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
<td>(Optional) Displays the user groups associated with the currently logged-in user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tasks</td>
<td>(Optional) Displays task IDs associated with the currently logged-in user. The tasks keyword indicates which task is reserved in the sample output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

When the `show user` command is used without any option, it displays the ID of the user who is logged in currently.

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>The following enhancements are added:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• An example was added to display all the group and tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The <code>authentication</code> keyword was added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The sample output for the <code>group</code> keyword was updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The sample output to display whether or not a task is reserved for the <code>tasks</code> keyword was updated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `show user` command to display all user groups and task IDs associated with the currently logged-in user.
The following command displays the authentication method parameters:

```
show user authentication method
```

The following command displays the groups:

```
show user group
```

The following command displays all the groups and tasks:

```
show user all
```

Example output:

```
Username: lab
Groups: root-system
Authenticated using method local
User lab has the following Task ID(s):

Task: aaa : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: acl : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: admin : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: atm : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: basic-services : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: bcdl : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: bfd : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: bgp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: boot : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: bundle : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: cdp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: cef : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: config-mgmt : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: config-services : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: crypto : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: diag : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: drivers : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: eligrp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: ext-access : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: fabric : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: fault-mgr : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: filesystem : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: firewall : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: fr : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: hdlc : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: host-services : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: hsrp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: interface : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: inventory : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: ip-services : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: ipv4 : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: ipv6 : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: isis : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: logging : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: lpts : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: monitor : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: mpls-ldp : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: mpls-static : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: mpls-te : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
Task: multicast : READ WRITE EXECUTE DEBUG
```
The following sample output displays the tasks and indicates which tasks are reserved from the `show user` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show user tasks
```

```
Task:           aaa           : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           acl            : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           admin          : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           atm            : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           basic-services : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           bcdi           : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           bfd            : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           bgp            : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           boot           : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           bundle         : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           cdp            : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           cef            : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           config-mgmt    : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           config-services: READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           crypto         : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           diag           : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           drivers        : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           eigrp          : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           ext-access     : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           fabric         : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           fault-mgr      : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           filesystem     : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           firewall       : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           fr             : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           hdlc           : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           host-services  : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           hsrp           : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           interface      : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           inventory      : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           ip-services    : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           ipv4           : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           ipv6           : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           isis           : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           logging        : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           lpts          : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           monitor        : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           mpls-ldp       : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           mpls-static    : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           mpls-te        : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
Task:           multicast      : READ  WRITE  EXECUTE  DEBUG
```
Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show aaa, on page 73</td>
<td>Displays the task maps for selected user groups, local users, or task groups.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**single-connection**

To multiplex all TACACS+ requests to this server over a single TCP connection, use the `single-connection` command in TACACS host configuration mode. To disable the single TCP connection for all new sessions that use a separate connection, use the `no` form of this command.

```
single-connection
no single-connection
```

**Syntax Description**

This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**

By default, a separate connection is used for each session.

**Command Modes**

TACACS host configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

The `single-connection` command allows the TACACS+ server to handle a greater number of TACACS operations than would be possible if multiple TCP connections were used to send requests to a server.

The TACACS+ server that is being used must support single-connection mode for this to be effective; otherwise, the connection between the network access server and the TACACS+ server locks up or you can receive unauthentic errors.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to configure a single TCP connection to be made with the TACACS+ server (IP address 209.165.200.226) and all authentication, authorization, accounting requests to use this TCP connection. This works only if the TACACS+ server is also configured in single-connection mode. To configure the TACACS+ server in single connection mode, refer to the respective server manual.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# tacacs-server host 209.165.200.226
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-tacacs-host)# single-connection
```
### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tacacs-server host, on page 102</td>
<td>Specifies a TACACS+ host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**tacacs-server host**

To specify a TACACS+ host server, use the **tacacs-server host** command. To delete the specified name or address, use the **no** form of this command.

```
tacacs-server host host-name [port port-number] [timeout seconds] [key [0 | 7] auth-key] [single-connection]

no tacacs-server host host-name [port port-number]
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>host-name</strong></td>
<td>Host or domain name or IP address of the TACACS+ server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>port port-number</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies a server port number. This option overrides the default, which is port 49. Valid port numbers range from 1 to 65535.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>timeout seconds</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies a timeout value that sets the length of time the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server waits to receive a response from the TACACS+ server. This option overrides the global timeout value set with the <strong>tacacs-server timeout</strong> command for this server only. The valid timeout range is from 1 to 1000 seconds. Default is 5. Note: You can use this parameter only in the config-tacacs-host sub-mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**key [0</td>
<td>7] auth-key**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>single-connection</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Multiplexes all TACACS+ requests to this server over a single TCP connection. By default, a separate connection is used for each session. Note: You can use this parameter only in the config-tacacs-host sub-mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

No TACACS+ host is specified.

The **port-name** argument, if not specified, defaults to the standard port 49.

The **seconds** argument, if not specified, defaults to 5 seconds.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration mode
This command was introduced in Release 2.0. The `show run` command was modified to display the default values for both the `port` keyword and the `timeout` keyword, if values are not specified.

Release 5.3.0: IPv6 support was introduced on this command.

### Usage Guidelines

You can use multiple `tacacs-server host` commands to specify additional hosts. Cisco IOS XR software searches for hosts in the order in which you specify them.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows how to specify a TACACS+ host with the IP address 209.165.200.226:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# tacacs-server host 209.165.200.226
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-tacacs-host)#
```

The following example shows that the default values from the `tacacs-server host` command are displayed from the `show run` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show run
Building configuration...
!! Last configuration change at 13:51:56 UTC Mon Nov 14 2005 by lab
! tacacs-server host 209.165.200.226 port 49
  timeout 5
!
```

The following example shows how to specify that the router consult the TACACS+ server host named host1 on port number 51. The timeout value for requests on this connection is 30 seconds; the encryption key is `a_secret`.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# tacacs-server host host1 port 51
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-tacacs-host)# timeout 30
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-tacacs-host)# key a_secret
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>key (TACACS+), on page 40</td>
<td>Specifies an authentication and encryption key shared between the AAA server and the TACACS+ server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single-connection, on page 100</td>
<td>Multiplexes all TACACS+ requests to this server over a single TCP connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tacacs-server key, on page 105</td>
<td>Globally sets the authentication encryption key used for all TACACS+ communications between the router and the TACACS+ daemon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tacacs-server timeout, on page 107</td>
<td>Globally sets the interval that the router waits for a server host to reply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeout (TACACS+), on page 116</td>
<td>Specifies a timeout value that sets the length of time the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server waits to receive a response from the TACACS+ server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**tacacs-server key**

To set the authentication encryption key used for all TACACS+ communications between the router and the TACACS+ daemon, use the `tacacs-server key` command. To disable the key, use the `no` form of this command.

```
tacacs-server key {0 clear-text-key| 7 encrypted-key| auth-key}
no tacacs-server key {0 clear-text-key| 7 encrypted-key| auth-key}
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>0 clear-text-key</code></td>
<td>Specifies an unencrypted (cleartext) shared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>7 encrypted-key</code></td>
<td>Specifies an encrypted shared key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>auth-key</code></td>
<td>Specifies the unencrypted key between the AAA server and the TACACS+ server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Global configuration mode

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The following keywords were added:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• auth-key</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The following keywords were added:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• auth-key</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Usage Guidelines

The key name entered must match the key used on the TACACS+ daemon. The key name applies to all servers that have no individual keys specified. All leading spaces are ignored; spaces within and after the key are not. If you use spaces in your key, do not enclose the key in quotation marks unless the quotation marks themselves are part of the key.

The key name is valid only when the following guidelines are followed:

- The clear-text-key argument must be followed by the 0 keyword.
- The encrypted-key argument must be followed by the 7 keyword.

The TACACS server key is used only if no key is configured for an individual TACACS server. Keys configured for an individual TACACS server always override this global key configuration.

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following example sets the authentication and encryption key to key1:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# tacacs-server key key1
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>key (TACACS+), on page 40</td>
<td>Specifies an authentication and encryption key shared between the AAA server and the TACACS+ server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tacacs-server host, on page 102</td>
<td>Specifies a TACACS+ host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
tacacs-server timeout

To set the interval that the server waits for a server host to reply, use the tacacs-server timeout command. To restore the default, use the no form of this command.

```
tacacs-server timeout seconds
no tacacs-server timeout seconds
```

**Syntax Description**

seconds

Integer that specifies the timeout interval (in seconds) from 1 to 1000.

**Command Default**

5 seconds

**Command Modes**

Global configuration mode

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

The TACACS+ server timeout is used only if no timeout is configured for an individual TACACS+ server. Timeout intervals configured for an individual TACACS+ server always override this global timeout configuration.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows the interval timer being changed to 10 seconds:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# tacacs-server timeout 10
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tacacs-server host</td>
<td>Specifies a TACACS+ host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**tacacs source-interface**

To specify the source IP address of a selected interface for all outgoing TACACS+ packets, use the `tacacs source-interface` command. To disable use of the specified interface IP address, use the `no` form of this command.

```
tacacs source-interface type path-id [vrf vrf-id]
no tacacs source-interface type path-id
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>Interface type. For more information, use the question mark (?) online help function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path-id</td>
<td>Physical interface or virtual interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vrf vrf-id</td>
<td>Specifies the name of the assigned VRF.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

If a specific source interface is not configured, or the interface is down or does not have an IP address configured, the system selects an IP address.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration mode

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 4.1.0</td>
<td>The <code>vrf</code> keyword was added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `tacacs source-interface` command to set the IP address of the specified interface for all outgoing TACACS+ packets. This address is used as long as the interface is in the `up` state. In this way, the TACACS+ server can use one IP address entry associated with the network access client instead of maintaining a list of all IP addresses.

This command is especially useful in cases where the router has many interfaces and you want to ensure that all TACACS+ packets from a particular router have the same IP address.

When the specified interface does not have an IP address or is in a `down` state, TACACS+ behaves as if no source interface configuration is used.
**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to set the IP address of the specified interface for all outgoing TACACS+ packets:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# tacacs source-interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/29 vrf abc
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server tacacs+, on page 22</td>
<td>Groups different server hosts into distinct lists and distinct methods.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To add a task ID to a task group, use the `task` command in task group configuration mode. To remove a task ID from a task group, use the `no` form of this command.

```plaintext
task {read|write|execute|debug} taskid-name  
no task {read|write|execute|debug} taskid-name
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>Enables read-only privileges for the named task ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>Enables write privileges for the named task ID. The term “write” implies read also.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>execute</td>
<td>Enables execute privileges for the named task ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debug</td>
<td>Enables debug privileges for the named task ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taskid-name</td>
<td>Name of the task ID.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

No task IDs are assigned to a newly created task group.

**Command Modes**

Task group configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `task` command in task group configuration mode. To access task group configuration mode, use the `taskgroup` command in global configuration mode.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to enable execute privileges for the config-services task ID and associate that task ID with the task group named taskgroup1:

```plaintext
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# taskgroup taskgroup1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-tg)# task execute config-services

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Commands</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>taskgroup, on page 112</td>
<td>Configures a task group to be associated with a set of task IDs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
taskgroup

To configure a task group to be associated with a set of task IDs, and to enter task group configuration mode, use the **taskgroup** command. To delete a task group, use the **no** form of this command.

```
taskgroup taskgroup-name [description string] task {read|write|execute|debug} taskid-name| inherit taskgroup taskgroup-name]
no taskgroup taskgroup-name
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>taskgroup-name</td>
<td>Name of a particular task group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>(Optional) Enables you to create a description for the named task group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>(Optional) Character string used for the task group description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>task</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that a task ID is to be associated with the named task group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that the named task ID permits read access only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that the named task ID permits read and write access only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>execute</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that the named task ID permits execute access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debug</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that the named task ID permits debug access only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taskid-name</td>
<td>(Optional) Name of a task: the task ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inherit taskgroup</td>
<td>(Optional) Copies permissions from the named task group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taskgroup-name</td>
<td>(Optional) Name of the task group from which permissions are to be inherited.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

Five predefined user groups are available by default.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration mode

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>Support was added to display all task groups in global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Usage Guidelines

Task groups are configured with a set of task IDs for each action type. Deleting a task group that is still referenced in the system results in a warning and rejection of the deletion.

From global configuration mode, you can display all the configured task groups. However, you cannot display all the configured task groups in taskgroup configuration mode.

Entering the `taskgroup` command with no keywords or arguments enters task group configuration mode, in which you can use the `description`, `inherit`, `show`, and `task` commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td></td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following example assigns read bgp permission to the task group named alpha:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# taskgroup alpha
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-tg)# task read bgp
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>description (AAA)</code>, on page 30</td>
<td>Creates a task group description in task configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>task</code>, on page 110</td>
<td>Adds a task ID to a task group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
timeout (RADIUS)

To specify the number of seconds the router waits for the RADIUS server to reply before retransmitting, use the `timeout` command in RADIUS server-group private configuration mode. To disable this command and return to the default timeout value of 5 seconds, use the `no` form of this command.

```
timeout seconds
no timeout seconds
```

**Syntax Description**

| seconds | Timeout value (in seconds). The range is from 1 to 1000. If no timeout is specified, the global value is used. |

**Command Default**

| seconds: 5 |

**Command Modes**

RADIUS server-group private configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to set the number of seconds for the timeout value:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa group server radius group
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius)# server-private 10.1.1.1 auth-port 300
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-radius-private)# timeout 500
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server tacacs+, on page 22</td>
<td>Groups different RADIUS server hosts into distinct lists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key (RADIUS), on page 38</td>
<td>Specifies the authentication and encryption key that is used between the router and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius-server timeout, on page 56</td>
<td>Sets the interval for which a router waits for a server host to reply before timing out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retransmit (RADIUS), on page 60</td>
<td>Specifies the number of times a RADIUS request is resent to a server if the server is not responding or is responding slowly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server-private (RADIUS), on page 68</td>
<td>Configures the IP address of the private RADIUS server for the group server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
timeout (TACACS+)

To specify a timeout value that sets the length of time the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server waits to receive a response from the TACACS+ server, use the `timeout (TACACS+)` command in TACACS host configuration mode. To disable this command and return to the default timeout value of 5 seconds, use the `no` form of this command.

```
timeout seconds
no timeout seconds
```

**Syntax Description**

| seconds | Timeout value (in seconds). The range is from 1 to 1000. If no timeout is specified, the global value is used. |

**Command Default**

```
seconds: 5
```

**Command Modes**

TACACS host configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

The `timeout (TACACS+)` command overrides the global timeout value set with the `tacacs-server timeout` command for this server only.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to set the number of seconds for the timeout value:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# tacacs-server host 209.165.200.226
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-tacacs-host)# timeout 500
```

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tacacs-server host, on page 102</td>
<td>Specifies a TACACS+ host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
timeout (TACACS+)
timeout login response

To set the interval that the server waits for a reply to a login, use the `timeout login response` command in line template configuration mode. To restore the default, use the `no` form of this command.

`timeout login response seconds`
`no timeout login response seconds`

**Syntax Description**

`seconds` Integer that specifies the timeout interval (in seconds) from 0 to 300.

**Command Default**

`seconds`: 30

**Command Modes**

Line template configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `timeout login response` command in line template configuration mode to set the timeout value. This timeout value applies to all terminal lines to which the entered line template is applied. This timeout value can also be applied to line console. After the timeout value has expired, the user is prompted again. The retry is allowed three times.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to change the interval timer to 20 seconds:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# line template alpha
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-line)# timeout login response 20
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>login authentication, on page 42</td>
<td>Enables AAA authentication for logging in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
usergroup

To configure a user group and associate it with a set of task groups, and to enter user group configuration mode, use the `usergroup` command. To delete a user group, or to delete a task-group association with the specified user group, use the `no` form of this command.

```plaintext
usergroup usergroup-name
no usergroup usergroup-name
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>usergroup-name</code></th>
<th>Name of the user group. The <code>usergroup-name</code> argument can be only one word. Spaces and quotation marks are not allowed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Command Default**

Five predefined user groups are available by default.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration mode

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>Support was added to display all user groups in global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

User groups are configured with the command parameters for a set of users, such as task groups. You can remove specific user groups by using the `no` form of the `usergroup` command. You can remove the user group itself by using the `no` form of the command without giving any parameters. Deleting a user group that is still referenced in the system results in a warning and a rejection of the deletion.

Use the `inherit usergroup`, on page 36 command to copy permissions from other user groups. The user group is inherited by the parent group and forms a union of all task IDs specified in those groups. Circular inclusions are detected and rejected. User groups cannot inherit properties from predefined groups, such as root-system and owner-sdr.

From global configuration mode, you can display all the configured user groups. However, you cannot display all the configured user groups in usergroup configuration mode.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The following example shows how to add permissions from the user group beta to the user group alpha:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# usergroup alpha
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ug)# inherit usergroup beta
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>description (AAA), on page 30</td>
<td>Creates a description of a task group during configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inherit usergroup, on page 36</td>
<td>Enables a user group to derive permissions from another user group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taskgroup, on page 112</td>
<td>Configures a task group to be associated with a set of task IDs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
username

To configure a new user with a username, establish a password, grant permissions for the user, and to enter username configuration mode, use the username command. To delete a user from the database, use the no form of this command.

username user-name [password {0| 7} password| secret {0| 5} password| group usergroup-name]
no username user-name [password {0| 7} password| secret {0| 5} password| group usergroup-name]

Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>user-name</td>
<td>Name of the user. The user-name argument can be only one word. Spaces and quotation marks are not allowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>(Optional) Enables a password to be created for the named user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that an unencrypted (clear-text) password follows. The password will be encrypted for storage in the configuration using a Cisco proprietary encryption algorithm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that an encrypted password follows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the unencrypted password text to be entered by the user to log in, for example, lab. If encryption is configured, the password is not visible to the user. Can be up to 253 characters in length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secret</td>
<td>(Optional) Enables an MD5-secured password to be created for the named user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that an unencrypted (clear-text) password follows. The password will be encrypted for storage in the configuration using an MD5 encryption algorithm.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5

(Optional) Specifies that an encrypted password follows.

group

(Optional) Enables a named user to be associated with a user group.

usergroup-name

(Optional) Name of a user group as defined with the usergroup command.

Command Default

No usernames are defined in the system.

Command Modes

Global configuration mode
Administration configuration

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>Support was added to display all user names in global configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>Having cisco-support privileges as the only group was disallowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.7.0</td>
<td>The command syntax descriptions, usage information, and examples were corrected or enhanced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines

A user is never allowed to have cisco-support privileges as the only group.

Note

Use the username command to identify the user and enter username configuration mode. Password and user group assignments can be made from either global configuration mode or username configuration submode. Permissions (task IDs) are assigned by associating the user with one or more defined user groups.

From global configuration mode, you can display all the configured usernames. However, you cannot display all the configured usernames in username configuration mode.

Each user is identified by a username that is unique across the administrative domain. Each user should be made a member of at least one user group. Deleting a user group may orphan the users associated with that group. The AAA server authenticates orphaned users, but most commands are not authorized.

The username command is associated with a particular user for local login authentication by default. Alternatively, a user and password can be configured in the database of the RADIUS server for RADIUS login authentication, or a user and password can be configured in the database of the TACACS+ server for
TACACS+ login authentication. For more information, see the description of the `aaa authentication`, on page 13 command.

The predefined group `root-system` may be specified only by root-system users while administration is configured.

---

**Note**

To enable the local networking device to respond to remote Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) challenges, one `username` command entry must be the same as the hostname entry that has already been assigned to the other networking device.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td></td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows the commands available after executing the `username` command:

```plaintext
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-un)# ?
clear Clear the uncommitted configuration
commit Commit the configuration changes to running
describe Describe a command without taking real actions
do Run an exec command
eixt Exit from this submode
group User group in which this user will be a member of
no Negate a command or set its defaults
password Specify the password for the user
pwd Commands used to reach current submode
root Exit to the global configuration mode
secret Specify the secure password for the user
show Show contents of configuration
```

The following example shows how to establish the clear-text password `password1` for the user name `user1`:

```plaintext
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-un)#
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-un)# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# username user1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# password 0 password1
```
The following example shows how to establish an MD5-secured secret for the user *user1* in administration configuration mode:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:P1(admin-config)# username user1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:P1(admin-config-un)# secret 0 lab
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:P1(admin-config-un)# commit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:May 6 13:06:43.205 : config[65723]: %MGBL-CONFIG-6-DB_COMMIT_ADMIN : Configuration committed by user 'cisco'. Use 'show configuration commit changes 2000000005' to view the changes.
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:P1(admin-config-un)# exit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:P1(admin-config)# show run username
username user1 secret 5 $1$QB03$3H29k3ZT.0PFMQ8QQXCF0
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Commands</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aaa authentication, on page 13</td>
<td>Defines a method list for authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>group (AAA), on page 32</td>
<td>Adds a user to a group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>password (AAA), on page 44</td>
<td>Creates a login password for a user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secret, on page 62</td>
<td>Creates a secure login secret for a user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
users group

To associate a user group and its privileges with a line, use the users group command in line template configuration mode. To delete a user group association with a line, use the no form of this command.

users group {usergroup-name| cisco-support| netadmin| operator| root-lr| root-system| sysadmin}

no users group {usergroup-name| cisco-support| netadmin| operator| root-lr| root-system| serviceadmin| sysadmin}

Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>usergroup-name</td>
<td>Name of the user group. The usergroup-name argument can be only one word.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spaces and quotation marks are not allowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cisco-support</td>
<td>Specifies that users logging in through the line are given Cisco support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>personnel privileges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>netadmin</td>
<td>Specifies that users logging in through the line are given network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>administrator privileges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operator</td>
<td>Specifies that users logging in through the line are given operator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>privileges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>root-lr</td>
<td>Specifies that users logging in through the line are given root logical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>router (LR) privileges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>root-system</td>
<td>Specifies that users logging in through the line are given root system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>privileges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serviceadmin</td>
<td>Specifies that users logging in through the line are given service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>administrator group privileges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sysadmin</td>
<td>Specifies that users logging in through the line are given system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>administrator privileges.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Command Default

None

Command Modes

Line template configuration

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>The serviceadmin keyword was added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Usage Guidelines

Use the **users group** command to enable a user group and its privileges to be associated with a line, meaning that users logging in through the line are given the privileges of the particular user group.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

In the following example, if a vty-pool is created with line template vty, users logging in through vty are given operator privileges:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa authen login vty-authen line
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# commit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# line template vty
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-line)# users group operator
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-line)# login authentication
```
vrf (RADIUS)

To configure the Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an AAA RADIUS server group, use the `vrf` command in RADIUS server-group configuration mode. To enable server groups to use the global (default) routing table, use the `no` form of this command.

```
vrf vrf-name
no vrf vrf-name
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vrf-name</td>
<td>Name assigned to a VRF.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

The default VRF is used.

**Command Modes**

RADIUS server-group configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `vrf` command to specify a VRF for an AAA RADIUS server group and enable dial-up users to use AAA servers in different routing domains.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to use the `vrf` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0> configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0(config)# aaa group server radius group1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0(config-sg-radius)# vrf vrf1
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>aaa group server tacacs+</code>, on page 22</td>
<td>Groups different RADIUS server hosts into distinct lists and distinct methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius source-interface, on page 58</td>
<td>Forces RADIUS to use the IP address of a specified interface or subinterface for all outgoing RADIUS packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server-private (RADIUS), on page 68</td>
<td>Configures the IP address of the private RADIUS server for the group server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
vrf (TACACS+)

To configure the Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an AAA TACACS+ server group, use the `vrf` command in TACACS+ server-group configuration mode. To enable server groups to use the global (default) routing table, use the `no` form of this command.

```
vrf vrf-name
no vrf vrf-name
```

**Syntax Description**

- `vrf-name`  
  Name assigned to a VRF.

**Command Default**

The default VRF is used.

**Command Modes**

TACACS+ server-group configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 4.1.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `vrf` command to specify a VRF for an AAA TACACS+ server group and enable dial-up users to use AAA servers in different routing domains.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

This example shows how to use the `vrf` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# aaa group server tacacs+ myserver
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-tacacs+)# server 9.27.10.6
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sg-tacacs+)# vrf abc
```
### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aaa group server tacacs+, on page 22</td>
<td>Groups different TACACS+ server hosts into distinct lists and distinct methods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server (TACACS+), on page 66</td>
<td>Specifies the source IP address of a selected interface for all outgoing TACACS+ packets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server-private (TACACS+), on page 71</td>
<td>Configures the IP address of the private TACACS+ server for the group server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
vrf (TACACS+)
IPSec Commands

This module describes the IPSec commands.

The following IPSec commands are available only if the <platform>-k9sec.pie is installed.

- clear crypto ipsec sa, page 134
- description (IPSec profile), page 136
- interface tunnel-ip (GRE), page 137
- show crypto ipsec sa, page 138
- show crypto ipsec summary, page 142
- show crypto ipsec transform-set, page 144
- tunnel mode (IP), page 145
- tunnel tos (IP), page 146
- tunnel ttl (IP), page 147
- tunnel dfbit disable (IP), page 148
clear crypto ipsec sa

To delete specific security associations (SAs), or all SAs in the IP Security (IPSec) security associations database (SADB), use the `clear crypto ipsec sa` command.

```
clear crypto ipsec sa {sa-id| all| counters | {sa-id| all}} interface tunnel-ipsec
```

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>sa-id</code></td>
<td>Identifier for the SA. IPSec supports from 1 to 64,500 sessions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>all</code></td>
<td>Deletes all IPSec SAs in the IPSec SADB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>counters</code></td>
<td>Clears the counters in the IPSec SADB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface</code></td>
<td>Clears the interfaces in the IPSec SADB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tunnel-ipsec</code></td>
<td>The range of tunnel-ipsec is $&lt;0-4294967295&gt;$.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Command Default

No default behavior or values

### Command Modes

EXEC

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>The range for the <code>sa-id</code> argument increased to 16500 sessions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The upper limit for the <code>sa-id</code> argument range was increased to 64,500 sessions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

SAs are established to secure data flows in IPSec. Use the `clear crypto ipsec sa` command to delete active IPSec sessions or force IPSec to reestablish new SAs. Usually, the establishment of SAs is negotiated between peers through Internet Key Exchange (IKE) on behalf of IPSec.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The following example shows how to remove the SA with ID 100 from the SADB:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# clear crypto ipsec sa 100
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show crypto ipsec sa, on page 138</td>
<td>Displays the settings used by current SAs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
description (IPSec profile)

To create a description of an IPSec profile, use the `description` command in profile configuration mode. To delete a profile description, use the `no` form of this command.

```
description string
no description
```

**Syntax Description**

- `string` Character string describing the IPSec profile.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Crypto IPSec profile

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `description` command inside the profile configuration submode to create a description for an IPSec profile.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>profile configuration</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows the creation of a profile description:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ipsec profile newprofile
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-newprofile)# description this is a sample profile
```
interface tunnel-ip (GRE)

To configure a tunnel interface for generic routing encapsulation (GRE), use the `interface tunnel-ip` command in global configuration mode. To delete the IP tunnel interface, use the `no` form of this command.

```
interface tunnel-ip number
no interface tunnel-ip number
```

**Syntax Description**

`number`  
Instance number of the interface. The range is from 0 to 65535.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.9.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>interface</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to use the `interface tunnel-ip` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface tunnel-ip 50000
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)#
```
show crypto ipsec sa

To display security association (SA) information based on the rack/slot/module location, use the `show crypto ipsec sa` command.

```
show crypto ipsec sa [sa-id| peer ip-address| profile profile-name| detail| count| fvrf fvrf-name| ivrf ivrf-name| location node-id]
```

**Syntax Description**

- `sa-id` (Optional) Identifier for the SA. The range is from 1 to 64500.
- `peer ip-address` (Optional) IP address used on the remote (PC) side. Invalid IP addresses are not accepted.
- `profile profile-name` (Optional) Specifies the alphanumeric name for a security profile. The character range is from 1 to 64. Profile names cannot be duplicated.
- `detail` (Optional) Provides additional dynamic SA information.
- `count` (Optional) Provides SA count.
- `fvrf fvrf-name` (Optional) Specifies that all existing SAs for front door virtual routing and forwarding (FVRF) is the same as the fvrf-name.
- `ivrf ivrf-name` (Optional) Specifies that all existing SAs for inside virtual routing and forwarding (IVRF) is the same as the ivrf-name.
- `location node-id` (Optional) Specifies that the SAs are configured on a specified location.

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>The range for the <code>sa-id</code> argument increased to 16500 sessions. Support was added for the following keywords:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>fvrf</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>ivrf</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <code>location</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The upper limit for the <code>sa-id</code> argument range was increased to 64,500 sessions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Usage Guidelines

If no optional argument or keyword is used, all SAs are displayed within a flow. Within a flow, the SAs are listed by protocol (Encapsulating Security Payload [ESP] or Authentication Header [AH]) and direction (inbound or outbound).

The detail keyword provides additional information only for SAs that are configured in a software crypto engine. The SAs are configured by using tunnel-ipsec and transport.

Examples

The following sample output is from the show crypto ipsec sa command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show crypto ipsec sa
SSA id: 510
Node id: 0/1/0
SA Type: MANUAL
interface: service-ipsec22
profile : p7
local ident (addr/mask/prot/port) : (0.0.0.0/0.0.0.255/512/0)
remote ident (addr/mask/prot/port) : (0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0/512/0)
local crypto endpt: 0.0.0.0, remote crypto endpt: 0.0.0.0, vrf default

#pkts tx :0  #pkts rx :0
#bytes tx :0  #bytes rx :0
#pkts encrypt :0 #pkts decrypt :0
#pkts digest :0  #pkts verify :0
#pkts encrpt fail:0 #pkts decrpt fail:0
#pkts digest fail:0 #pkts verify fail:0
#pkts replay fail:0
#pkts tx errors :0 #pkts rx errors :0

outbound esp sas:
  spi: 0x322 (802)
  transform: esp-3des-md5
  in use settings - Tunnel
  sa agreed lifetime: 3600s, 4194303kb
  sa timing: remaining key lifetime: 3142303931sec/0kb
  sa DPD: disable, mode none, timeout 0s
  sa idle timeout: disable, 0s
  sa anti-replay (HW accel): enable, window 64

inbound esp sas:
  spi: 0x322 (802)
  transform: esp-3des-md5
  in use settings - Tunnel
  sa agreed lifetime: 3600s, 4194303kb
  sa timing: remaining key lifetime: 3142303931sec/0kb
  sa DPD: disable, mode none, timeout 0s
  sa idle timeout: disable, 0s
  sa anti-replay (HW accel): enable, window 64
```

This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.
Table 9: show crypto ipsec sa Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SA id</td>
<td>Identifier for the SA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface</td>
<td>Identifier for the interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profile</td>
<td>String of alphanumeric characters that specify the name of a security profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local ident</td>
<td>IP address, mask, protocol, and port of the local peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remote ident</td>
<td>IP address, mask, protocol and port of the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outbound esp sas</td>
<td>Outbound ESP SAs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inbound esp sas</td>
<td>Inbound ESP SAs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transform</td>
<td>The transform being used in the SA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa lifetime</td>
<td>The lifetime value used in the SA.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sample output is from the `show crypto ipsec sa` command for the `profile` keyword for a profile named pn1:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show crypto ipsec sa profile pn1

SA id: 2
interface: tunnel0
profile: pn1
local ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (172.19.70.92/255.255.255.255/0/0)
remote ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (172.19.72.120/255.255.255.255/0/0)
local crypto endpt: 172.19.70.92, remote crypto endpt: 172.19.72.120
outbound esp sas: spi: 0x8b0e950f (2332988687)
transform: esp-3des-sha
in use settings = Tunnel
sa lifetime: 3600s, 4194303kb

SA id: 2
interface: tunnel0
profile: pn1
local ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (172.19.72.120/255.255.255.255/0/0)
remote ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (172.19.70.92/255.255.255.255/0/0)
local crypto endpt: 172.19.72.120, remote crypto endpt: 172.19.70.92
inbound esp sas: spi: 0x2777997c (662149500)
transform: esp-3des-sha
in use settings = Tunnel
sa lifetime: 3600s, 4194303kb

The following sample output is from the `show crypto ipsec sa` command for the `peer` keyword:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show crypto ipsec sa peer 172.19.72.120

SA id: 2
interface: tunnel0
profile: pn1
local ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (172.19.70.92/255.255.255.255/0/0)
remote ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (172.19.72.120/255.255.255.255/0/0)
local crypto endpt: 172.19.70.92, remote crypto endpt: 172.19.72.120
outbound esp sa:
spi: 0x8b0e950f (2332988687)
transform: esp-3des-sha
in use settings = Tunnel
sa lifetime: 3600s, 4194303kb

SA id: 2
interface: tunnel0
profile: pn1
local ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (172.19.72.120/255.255.255.255/0/0)
remote ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (172.19.70.92/255.255.255.255/0/0)
local crypto endpt: 172.19.72.120, remote crypto endpt: 172.19.70.92
inbound esp sa:
spi: 0x2777997c (662149500)
transform: esp-3des-sha
in use settings = Tunnel
sa lifetime: 3600s, 4194303kb
show crypto ipsec summary

To display IP Security (IPSec) summary information, use the **show crypto ipsec summary** command.

**show crypto ipsec summary**

**Syntax Description**

This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.5.0</td>
<td>Sample output was modified to display port number to the local peer and remote peer fields.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following sample output is from the **show crypto ipsec summary** command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show crypto ipsec summary
# * Attached to a transform indicates a bundle
# Active IPSec Sessions: 1
SA Interface Local Peer/Port Remote Peer/Port FVRF Profile Transform Lifetime
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------
502 service-ipsec100 70.70.70.2/500 60.60.60.2/500 default ipsec1 esp-3des esp 3600/100000000
This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.
```

**Table 10: show crypto ipsec summary Field Descriptions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SA</td>
<td>Identifier for the security association.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node</td>
<td>Identifier for the node.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Peer</td>
<td>IP address of the local peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Peer</td>
<td>IP address of the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FVRF</td>
<td>The front door virtual routing and forwarding (FVRF) of the SA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the FVRF is global, the output shows f_vrf as an empty field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Profile mode type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile</td>
<td>Crypto profile in use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transform</td>
<td>Transform in use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lifetime</td>
<td>Lifetime value, displayed in seconds followed by kilobytes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show crypto ipsec transform-set

To display the configured transform sets, use the `show crypto ipsec transform-set` command.

```
show crypto ipsec transform-set [ transform-set-name ]
```

**Syntax Description**

```
transform-set-name
```

(Optional) IPSec transform set with the specified value for the `transform-set-name` argument are displayed.

**Command Default**

No default values. The default behavior is to print all the available transform-sets.

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.5.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

If no transform is specified, all transforms are displayed.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following sample output is from the `show crypto ipsec transform-set` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show crypto ipsec transform-set
Transform set combined-des-sha: {esp-des esp-sha-hmac}
Transform set tsfm2: {esp-md5-hmac esp-3des }
   Mode: Transport
Transform set tsfm1: {esp-md5-hmac esp-3des }
   Mode: Tunnel
Transform set tsi: {esp-des }
   Mode: Tunnel
```
tunnel mode (IP)

To set the encapsulation mode of the tunnel interface, use the `tunnel mode` in interface configuration mode. To delete the encapsulation mode, use the `no` form of this command.

```
tunnel mode gre ipv4
no tunnel mode
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>gre</code></td>
<td>Generic Routing Encapsulation tunnel component.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ipv4</code></td>
<td>IPv4 address of the tunnel interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**
The default tunnel mode is `gre ipv4`.

**Command Modes**
Interface configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.9.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
The tunnel is not operational until one of the modes is specified. Only one mode can be specified for a tunnel instance at any given time.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tunnel</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**
The following example shows how to set the encapsulation mode of the tunnel interface:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface tunnel-ip 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# tunnel mode gre ipv4
```
**tunnel tos (IP)**

To specify a TOS value in the tunnel encapsulating packet, use the `tunnel tos` command in the interface configuration mode. To return to the default TOS value, use the `no` form of this command.

```
tunnel tos tos number
no tunnel tos
```

**Syntax Description**

| tos number | TOS value in numbers. Range is from 0 to 255 |

**Command Default**

The system copies the TOS and COS bits of the internal IP header to the GRE IP header.

**Command Modes**

- Interface configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.9.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tunnel</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to set the encapsulation mode of the tunnel interface:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface tunnel-ip 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# tunnel tos 134
```
tunnel ttl (IP)

To configure the time-to-live (TTL) value for the packets entering the tunnel, use the `tunnel ttl` command in the interface configuration mode. To return to the default TTL value, use the `no` form of this command.

`tunnel ttl ttl number`

`no tunnel ttl`

**Syntax Description**

| `ttl number` | TTL value in numbers. Range is from 1 to 255 |

**Command Default**

The default value is 255.

**Command Modes**

Interface configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.9.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tunnel</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to set the encapsulation mode of the tunnel interface:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface tunnel-ip 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# tunnel ttl 100
```
tunnel dfbit disable (IP)

To allow fragmentation by configuring the DF bit setting in the tunnel transport header, use the **tunnel dfbit disable** command in the interface configuration mode. To return to the default DF bit setting, use the **no** form of this command.

```
tunnel dfbit disable
no tunnel dfbit disable
```

**Syntax Description**
This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**
The tunnel transport header is encapsulated with the DF bit set.

**Command Modes**
Interface configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.9.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tunnel</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to set the encapsulation mode of the tunnel interface:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface tunnel-ip 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# tunnel dfbit disable
```
Keychain Management Commands

This module describes the commands used to configure keychain management.

For detailed information about keychain management concepts, configuration tasks, and examples, see the Implementing Keychain Management on the Cisco IOS XR Software configuration module in the Cisco IOS XR System Security Configuration Guide for the Cisco CRS Router.

- accept-lifetime, page 150
- accept-tolerance, page 152
- key (key chain), page 154
- key chain (key chain), page 156
- key-string (keychain), page 158
- send-lifetime, page 160
- show key chain, page 162
accept-lifetime

To set the time period during which the authentication key on a keychain is received as valid, use the accept-lifetime command in key configuration mode. To revert to the default value, use the no form of this command.

**accept-lifetime start-time [duration duration value| infinite| end-time]**

**no accept-lifetime start-time [duration duration value| infinite| end-time]**

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>start-time</strong></td>
<td>Start time, in <strong>hh:mm:ss day month year</strong> format, in which the key becomes valid. The range is from 0:0:0 to 23:59:59. The range for the number of days of the month is from 1 to 31. The range for the years is from 1993 to 2035.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>duration duration value</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Determines the lifetime of the key in seconds. The range is from 1-2147483646.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>infinite</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that the key never expires after it becomes valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>end-time</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Time, in <strong>hh:mm:ss day month year</strong> format, after which the key expires. The range is from 0:0:0 to 23:59:59.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Key configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The range values were added for the <strong>start-time</strong> argument.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The following example shows how to use the `accept-lifetime` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# key chain isis-keys
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-isis-keys)# key 8
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-isis-keys-0x8)# accept-lifetime 1:00:00 June 29 2006 infinite
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>key (key chain), on page 154</td>
<td>Creates or modifies a keychain key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key chain (key chain), on page 156</td>
<td>Creates or modifies a keychain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key-string (keychain), on page 158</td>
<td>Specifies the text for the key string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send-lifetime, on page 160</td>
<td>Sends the valid key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show key chain, on page 162</td>
<td>Displays the keychain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
accept-tolerance

To specify the tolerance or acceptance limit, in seconds, for an accept key that is used by a peer, use the `accept-tolerance` command in keychain configuration mode. To disable this feature, use the `no` form of this command.

```
accept-tolerance [value| infinite]
no accept-tolerance [value| infinite]
```

**Syntax Description**

- `value` *(Optional) Tolerance range, in seconds. The range is from 1 to 8640000.*
- `infinite` *(Optional) Specifies that the tolerance specification is infinite. The accept key never expires. The tolerance limit of infinite indicates that an accept key is always acceptable and validated when used by a peer.*

**Command Default**
The default value is 0, which is no tolerance.

**Command Modes**
Keychain configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
If you do not configure the `accept-tolerance` command, the tolerance value is set to zero.

Even though the key is outside the active lifetime, the key is deemed acceptable as long as it is within the tolerance limit (for example, either prior to the start of the lifetime, or after the end of the lifetime).

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**
The following example shows how to use the `accept-tolerance` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# key chain isis-keys
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-isis-keys)# accept-tolerance infinite
```
### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accept-lifetime, on page 150</td>
<td>Accepts the valid key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key chain (key chain), on page 156</td>
<td>Creates or modifies a keychain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show key chain, on page 162</td>
<td>Displays the keychain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**key (key chain)**

To create or modify a keychain key, use the `key` command in keychain-key configuration mode. To disable this feature, use the `no` form of this command.

```
key key-id
no key key-id
```

**Syntax Description**

```
key-id 48-bit integer key identifier of from 0 to 281474976710655.
```

**Command Default**

No default behavior or values

**Command Modes**

Keychain-key configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

For a Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) keychain configuration, the range for the `key-id` argument must be from 0 to 63. If the range is above the value of 63, the BGP keychain operation is rejected.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to use the `key` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# key chain isis-keys
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-isis-keys)# key 8
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-isis-keys-0x8)#
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accept-lifetime, on page 150</td>
<td>Accepts the valid key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key chain (key chain), on page 156</td>
<td>Creates or modifies a keychain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key-string (keychain), on page 158</td>
<td>Specifies the text for the key string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send-lifetime, on page 160</td>
<td>Sends the valid key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show key chain, on page 162</td>
<td>Displays the keychain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**key chain (key chain)**

To create or modify a keychain, use the **key chain** command. To disable this feature, use the **no** form of this command.

```
key chain key-chain-name
no key chain key-chain-name
```

**Syntax Description**

- **key-chain-name**: Specifies the name of the keychain. The maximum number of characters is 48.

---

**Command Default**

No default behavior or values

**Command Modes**

Global configuration mode

---

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.1</td>
<td>The maximum number of characters allowed in the keychain name was changed from 32 to 48.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Usage Guidelines**

You can configure a keychain for Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) as a neighbor, session group, or neighbor group. BGP can use the keychain to implement a hitless key rollover for authentication.

---

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Examples**

The following example shows that the name of the keychain isis-keys is for the **key chain** command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# key chain isis-keys
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-isis-keys)#
```
## Keychain Management Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accept-lifetime, on page 150</td>
<td>Accepts the valid key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accept-tolerance, on page 152</td>
<td>Configures a tolerance value to accept keys for the keychain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key (key chain), on page 154</td>
<td>Creates or modifies a keychain key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key-string (keychain), on page 158</td>
<td>Specifies the text for the key string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send-lifetime, on page 160</td>
<td>Sends the valid key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show key chain, on page 162</td>
<td>Displays the keychain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
key-string (keychain)

To specify the text string for the key, use the `key-string` command in keychain-key configuration mode. To disable this feature, use the `no` form of this command.

**key-string [clear| password] key-string-text**

**no key-string [clear| password] key-string-text**

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clear</td>
<td>Specifies the key string in clear-text form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Specifies the key in encrypted form.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| key-string-text| Text string for the key, which is encrypted by the parser process before being saved to the configuration. The text string has the following character limitations:  
  • Plain-text key strings—Minimum of 1 character and a maximum of 32.  
  • Encrypted key strings—Minimum of 4 characters and no maximum. |

### Command Default

The default value is clear.

### Command Modes

Keychain-key configuration

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.7.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

For an encrypted password to be valid, the following statements must be true:

- String must contain an even number of characters, with a minimum of four.
- The first two characters in the password string must be decimal numbers and the rest must be hexadecimals.
- The first two digits must not be a number greater than 53.
Either of the following examples would be valid encrypted passwords:

1234abcd

or

50aefd

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows how to use the `key-string` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# key chain isis-keys
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-isis-keys)# key 8
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-isis-keys=0x8)# key-string password 850aefd
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accept-lifetime, on page 150</td>
<td>Accepts the valid key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key (key chain), on page 154</td>
<td>Creates or modifies a keychain key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key chain (key chain), on page 156</td>
<td>Creates or modifies a keychain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send-lifetime, on page 160</td>
<td>Sends the valid key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show key chain, on page 162</td>
<td>Displays the keychain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
send-lifetime

To send the valid key and to authenticate information from the local host to the peer, use the send-lifetime command in keychain-key configuration mode. To disable this feature, use the no form of this command.

send-lifetime start-time [duration duration value| infinite| end-time]

no send-lifetime start-time [duration duration value| infinite| end-time]

Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>start-time</td>
<td>Start time, in hh:mm:ss day month year format, in which the key becomes valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duration duration</td>
<td>(Optional) Determines the lifetime of the key in seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that the key never expires once it becomes valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinite</td>
<td>(Optional) Time, in hh:mm:ss day month year format, after which the key expires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end-time</td>
<td>(Optional) Time, in hh:mm:ss day month year format, after which the key expires.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Command Default

No default behavior or values

Command Modes

Keychain-key configuration

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The range values were added for the start-time argument.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following example shows how to use the `send-lifetime` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# key chain isis-keys
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-isis-keys)# key 8
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-isis-keys-0x8)# send-lifetime 1:00:00 June 29 2006 infinite
```
show key chain

To display the keychain, use the `show key chain` command.

`show key chain key-chain-name`

**Syntax Description**

`key-chain-name` Names of the keys in the specified keychain. The maximum number of characters is 32.

**Command Default**

If the command is used without any parameters, then it lists out all the key chains.

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

When a secure key storage becomes available, it is desirable for keychain management to alternatively prompt you for a master password and display the key label after decryption. The following example displays only the encrypted key label for the `show key chain` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show key chain isis-keys
Key-chain: isis-keys/ -
accept-tolerance -- infinite
Key 8 -- text "8"
   cryptographic-algorithm -- MD5
   Send lifetime: 01:00:00, 29 Jun 2006 - Always valid [Valid now]
   Accept lifetime: 01:00:00, 29 Jun 2006 - Always valid [Valid now]
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accept-lifetime, on page 150</td>
<td>Accepts the valid key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accept-tolerance, on page 152</td>
<td>Configures a tolerance value to accept keys for the keychain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key (key chain), on page 154</td>
<td>Creates or modifies a keychain key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key chain (key chain), on page 156</td>
<td>Creates or modifies a keychain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key-string (keychain), on page 158</td>
<td>Specifies the text for the key string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send-lifetime, on page 160</td>
<td>Sends the valid key.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lawful Intercept Commands

This module describes the Cisco IOS XR software commands used to configure lawful intercept (LI).

For detailed information about keychain management concepts, configuration tasks, and examples, see the *Implementing Lawful Intercept in the Cisco IOS XR Software the Configuration Module*. 

- lawful-intercept disable, page 166
- overlap-tap enable, page 167
lawful-intercept disable

To disable the Lawful Intercept (LI) feature, use the `lawful-intercept disable` command. To re-enable the LI feature, use the `no` form of this command.

```
lawful-intercept disable
no lawful-intercept disable
```

Syntax Description

This command has no keywords or arguments.

Command Default

Lawful intercept feature is not enabled by default.

Command Modes

Global configuration

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.8.0</td>
<td>This command is introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines

If you disable lawful intercept, all Mediation Devices and associated TAPs are deleted.

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>li</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

This example shows how to configure the `lawful-intercept disable` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# lawful-intercept disable
```
overlap-tap enable

To configure traffic interception separately for two inter-communicating intercepted hosts, use the **overlap-tap enable** command in Global Configuration mode. To revert to the default configuration, use the **no** form of this command.

**overlap-tap enable**

**no overlap-tap enable**

**Syntax Description**
This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**
For two inter-communicating hosts where both the hosts are separately intercepted, only the ingress traffic on the ASR 9000 router related to one of the hosts is intercepted.

**Command Modes**
Global Configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 5.3.2</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
To use **overlap-tap enable** command, you must have lawful intercept configured by installing and activating `asr9k-li-px.pie`.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>li</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**
The following example shows how to configure interception of both the ingress and egress traffic on the ASR 9000 router related to two inter-communicating hosts.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# overlap-tap enable
```
overlap-tap enable
Management Plane Protection Commands

This module describes the commands used to configure management plane protection (MPP).

For detailed information about keychain management concepts, configuration tasks, and examples, see the Implementing Management Plane Protection on the Cisco IOS XR Software module in the Cisco IOS XR System Security Configuration Guide for the Cisco CRS Router Software configuration module.

- address ipv4 (MPP), page 170
- allow, page 172
- control-plane, page 175
- inband, page 176
- interface (MPP), page 178
- management-plane, page 180
- out-of-band, page 181
- show mgmt-plane, page 183
- vrf (MPP), page 185
address ipv4 (MPP)

To configure the peer IPv4 or IPv6 address in which management traffic is allowed on the interface, use the `address ipv4` command in interface peer configuration mode. To remove the IP address that was previously configured on this interface, use the `no` form of this command.

```
address {ipv4|ipv6} peer-ip-address [peer-ip-address/length]
no address {ipv4|ipv6} peer-ip-address [peer-ip-address/length]
```

**Syntax Description**

- `peer-ip-address` (Required) Peer IPv4 or IPv6 address in which management traffic is allowed on the interface. This address can effectively be the source address of the management traffic that is coming in on the configured interface.

- `peer-ip-address/length` (Required) Prefix of the peer IP address and IPv4 or IPv6 format:
  - IPv4—`A.B.C.D/length`
  - IPv6—`X.X.X.X`

**Command Default**

If no specific peer is configured, all peers are allowed.

**Command Modes**

Interface peer configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to configure the peer IPv6 address 33::33 for management traffic:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# control-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ctrl)# management-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp)# inbandout-of-band
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp-inbandoutband)# interface GigabitEthernet POS 0/16/10/12
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp-inbandoutband-GigabitEthernet0_1_1_1POS0_6_0_2)# allow
```
Telnet TFTP peer
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-telnettftp-peer)# **address ipv4 10.1.0.0/16 ipv6 33::33**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Commands</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Command</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allow, on page 172</td>
<td>Configures an interface as an inband or out-of-band interface to allow all peer addresses for a specified protocol or all protocols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>control-plane, on page 175</td>
<td>Configures the control plane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inband, on page 176</td>
<td>Configures an inband interface or protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface (MPP), on page 178</td>
<td>Configures a specific inband or out-of-band interface or all inband or out-of-band interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>management-plane, on page 180</td>
<td>Configures management plane protection to allow and disallow protocols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out-of-band, on page 181</td>
<td>Configures out-of-band interfaces or protocols and enters management plane protection out-of-band configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show mgmt-plane, on page 183</td>
<td>Displays the management plane.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
allow

To configure an interface as an inband or out-of-band interface to allow all peer addresses for a specified protocol or all protocols, use the `allow` command in management plane protection inband interface configuration mode or management plane protection out-of-band interface configuration. To disallow a protocol on an interface, use the `no` form of this command.

`allow {protocol|all} [peer]`

`no allow {protocol|all} [peer]`

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>protocol</code></td>
<td>Interface configured to allow peer-filtering for the following specified protocol's traffic:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• HTTP(S)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SNMP (also versions)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Secure Shell (v1 and v2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• TFTP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Telnet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• XML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>all</strong></td>
<td>Configures the interface to allow peer-filtering for all the management traffic that is specified in the list of protocols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>peer</strong></td>
<td>(Optional) Configures the peer address on the interface. Peer refers to the neighboring router interface in which traffic might arrive to the main router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

By default, no management protocol is allowed on any interface except the management interfaces.

**Command Modes**

Management plane protection inband interface configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.5.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The following modifications were added:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The peer keyword was added to support peer-filtering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Management plane protection out-of-band interface configuration mode was added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 4.0.0</td>
<td>The XML keyword was added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Usage Guidelines

If you permit or allow a specific protocol to an interface, traffic is allowed only for that protocol, and all other management traffic is dropped.

After you configure the interface as inband or out-of-band, the specified protocol's traffic, or all protocol traffic, is allowed on the interface. Interfaces that are not configured as inband or out-of-band interfaces, drop the protocol traffic.

The IOS XR XML API provides a programmatic interface to the router for use by external management applications. This interface provides a mechanism for router configuration and monitoring utilizing XML formatted request and response streams. As one of the management services, XML should be capable of applying MPP. To secure XML MPP data, XML keyword has been added to the command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following example shows how to configure all management protocols for all inband interfaces:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# control-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ctrl)# management-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp)# inband
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp-inband)# interface all
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp-inband-all)# allow all

The following example shows how to configure peer interface for the TFTP protocol for out-of-band interfaces:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# control-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ctrl)# management-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp)# out-of-band
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp-outband)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/1/1/2
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp-outband-GigabitEthernet0_1_1_2)# allow TFTP peer
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-tftp-peer)#

The following example shows how to configure MPP support on an XML peer in-band interface:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# control-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ctrl)# management-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ctrl-mpp)# inband interface all allow xml peer address ipv4 172.10.10.1

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>control-plane</td>
<td>Configures the control plane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inband</td>
<td>Configures an inband interface or protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface (MPP), on page 178</td>
<td>Configures a specific inband or out-of-band interface or all inband or out-of-band interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>management-plane, on page 180</td>
<td>Configures management plane protection to allow and disallow protocols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out-of-band, on page 181</td>
<td>Configures out-of-band interfaces or protocols and enters management plane protection out-of-band configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show mgmt-plane, on page 183</td>
<td>Displays the management plane.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
control-plane

To enter the control plane configuration mode, use the control-plane command. To disable all the configurations under control plane mode, use the no form of this command.

control-plane
no control-plane

Syntax Description
This command has no keywords or arguments.

Command Default
None

Command Modes
Global configuration mode

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.5.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines
Use the control-plane command to enter control plane configuration mode.

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples
The following example shows how to enter control plane configuration mode using the control-plane command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# control-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ctrl)#
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>management-plane, on page 180</td>
<td>Configures management plane protection to allow and disallow protocols.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**inband**

To configure an inband interface and to enter management plane protection inband configuration mode, use the `inband` command in management plane protection configuration mode. To disable all configurations under inband configuration mode, use the `no` form of this command.

```
inband  
no inband
```

**Syntax Description**

This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Management plane protection inband configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.5.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `inband` command to enter management plane protection inband configuration mode.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to enter management plane protection inband configuration mode using the `inband` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure  
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# control-plane  
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ctrl)# management-plane  
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp)# inband  
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp-inband)#
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>control-plane, on page 175</td>
<td>Configures the control plane.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Management Plane Protection Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>interface (MPP), on page 178</td>
<td>Configures a specific inband or out-of-band interface or all inband or out-of-band interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>management-plane, on page 180</td>
<td>Configures management plane protection to allow and disallow protocols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out-of-band, on page 181</td>
<td>Configures out-of-band interfaces or protocols and enters management plane protection out-of-band configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show mgmt-plane, on page 183</td>
<td>Displays the management plane.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
interface (MPP)

To configure a specific interface or all interfaces as an inband or out-of-band interface, use the `interface` command in management plane protection inband configuration mode or management plane protection out-of-band configuration mode. To disable all the configurations under an interface mode, use the `no` form of this command.

```
interface {type interface-path-id} all
no interface {type interface-path-id} all
```

**Syntax Description**

- `type` Interface type. For more information, use the question mark (?) online help function.
- `interface-path-id` Virtual interface instance. Number range varies depending on interface type.

**Note** Use the `show interfaces` command in EXEC mode to see a list of all interfaces currently configured on the router.

For more information about the syntax for the router, use the question mark (?) online help function.

- `all` Configures all interfaces to allow for management traffic.

**Command Default** None

**Command Modes** Management plane protection out-of-band configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.5.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The management plane protection out-of-band configuration mode was added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `interface` command to enter management plane protection inband interface configuration mode or management plane protection out-of-band interface configuration mode.

For the `instance` argument, you cannot configure Management Ethernet interfaces as inband interfaces.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The following example shows how to configure all inband interfaces for MPP:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# control-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ctrl)# management-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp)# inband
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp-inband)# interface all
```

The following example shows how to configure all out-of-band interfaces for MPP:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# control-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ctrl)# management-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp)# out-of-band
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp-outband)# interface all
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>allow</strong>, on page 172</td>
<td>Configures an interface as an inband or out-of-band interface to allow all peer addresses for a specified protocol or all protocols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>control-plane</strong>, on page 175</td>
<td>Configures the control plane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>inband</strong>, on page 176</td>
<td>Configures an inband interface or protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>management-plane</strong>, on page 180</td>
<td>Configures management plane protection to allow and disallow protocols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>out-of-band</strong>, on page 181</td>
<td>Configures out-of-band interfaces or protocols and enters management plane protection out-of-band configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>show mgmt-plane</strong>, on page 183</td>
<td>Displays the management plane.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
management-plane

To configure management plane protection to allow and disallow protocols, use the `management-plane` command in control plane configuration mode. To disable all configurations under management-plane mode, use the `no` form of this command.

```
management-plane
no management-plane
```

### Syntax Description

This command has no keywords or arguments.

### Command Default

None

### Command Modes

Control plane configuration

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.5.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

Use the `management-plane` command to enter the management plane protection configuration mode.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows how to enter management plane protection configuration mode using the `management-plane` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# control-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ctrl)# management-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp)#
```
out-of-band

To configure out-of-band interfaces or protocols and to enter management plane protection out-of-band configuration mode, use the `out-of-band` command in management plane protection configuration mode. To disable all configurations under management plane protection out-of-band configuration mode, use the `no` form of this command.

```
out-of-band
no out-of-band
```

**Syntax Description**

This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Management plane protection out-of-band configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `out-of-band` command to enter management plane protection out-of-band configuration mode.

*Out-of-band* refers to an interface that allows only management protocol traffic to be forwarded or processed. An *out-of-band management interface* is defined by the network operator to specifically receive network management traffic. The advantage is that forwarding (or customer) traffic cannot interfere with the management of the router.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to enter management plane protection out-of-band configuration mode using the `out-of-band` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# control-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ctrl)# management-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp)# out-of-band
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp-outband)#
```
### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>control-plane, on page 175</td>
<td>Configures the control plane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inband, on page 176</td>
<td>Configures an inband interface or protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface (MPP), on page 178</td>
<td>Configures a specific inband or out-of-band interface or all inband or out-of-band interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>management-plane, on page 180</td>
<td>Configures management plane protection to allow and disallow protocols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show mgmt-plane, on page 183</td>
<td>Displays the management plane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vrf (MPP), on page 185</td>
<td>Configures a Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an out-of-band interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show mgmt-plane

To display information about the management plane such as type of interface and protocols enabled on the interface, use the `show mgmt-plane` command.

```
show mgmt-plane [inband| out-of-band] [interface type interface-path-id] vrf
```

**Syntax Description**

- **inband** (Optional) Displays the inband management interface configurations that are the interfaces that process management packets as well as data-forwarding packets. An inband management interface is also called a *shared management interface*.

- **out-of-band** (Optional) Displays the out-of-band interface configurations. Out-of-band interfaces are defined by the network operator to specifically receive network management traffic.

- **interface** (Optional) Displays all the protocols that are allowed in the specified interface.

- **type** Interface type. For more information, use the question mark (?) online help function.

- **interface-path-id** Interface instance. Number range varies depending on interface type.

  **Note** Use the `show interfaces` command to see a list of all interfaces currently configured on the router. For more information about the syntax for the router, use the question mark (?) online help function.

- **vrf** (Optional) Displays the Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding reference of an out-of-band interface.

**Command Default** None

**Command Modes** EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.5.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The following modifications were added:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Both <em>inband</em> and <em>out-of-band</em> keywords were added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The <em>vrf</em> keyword was added only for out-of-band VRF configurations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Sample output was updated to display inband and out-of-band interface configurations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Usage Guidelines**

The `vrf` keyword is valid only for out-of-band VRF configurations.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>system</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following sample output displays all the interfaces that are configured as inband or out-of-band interfaces under MPP:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show mgmt-plane
Management Plane Protection
  inband interfaces
  ----------------------
  interface - GigabitEthernet0_1_1_0
    ssh configured -
      All peers allowed
    telnet configured -
      peer v4 allowed - 10.1.0.0/16
      all configured -
        All peers allowed
  interface - GigabitEthernet0_1_1_0
    telnet configured -
      peer v4 allowed - 10.1.0.0/16
  interface - all
    all configured -
      All peers allowed
  outband interfaces
  ----------------------
  interface - GigabitEthernet0_1_1_0
    tftp configured -
      peer v6 allowed - 33::33
```

The following sample output displays the Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an out-of-band interface:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show mgmt-plane out-of-band vrf
Management Plane Protection -
  out-of-band VRF - my_out_of_band
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>management-plane, on page 180</td>
<td>Configures management plane protection to allow and disallow protocols.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
vrf (MPP)

To configure a Virtual Private Network (VPN) routing and forwarding (VRF) reference of an out-of-band interface, use the vrf command in management plane protection out-of-band configuration mode. To remove the VRF definition before the VRF name is used, use the no form of this command.

```
vrf vrf-name
no vrf vrf-name
```

**Syntax Description**

vrf-name Name assigned to a VRF.

**Command Default**

The VRF concept must be used to configure interfaces as out-of-band. If no VRF is configured during an out-of-band configuration, the interface goes into a default VRF.

**Command Modes**

Management plane protection out-of-band configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

If the VRF reference is not configured, the default name MPP_OUTBAND_VRF is used.

If there is an out-of-band configuration that is referring to a VRF and the VRF is deleted, all the MPP bindings are removed.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to configure the VRF:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# vrf my_out_of_band
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-vrf)# address-family ipv4 unicast
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-vrf-af)# exit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-vrf)# address-family ipv6 unicast
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-vrf-af)# commit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-vrf-af)# end
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#
```
The following example shows how to configure the VRF definition for MPP:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# control-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ctrl)# management-plane
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp)# out-of-band
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-mpp-outband)# vrf my_out_of_band

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>control-plane, on page 175</td>
<td>Configures the control plane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface (MPP), on page 178</td>
<td>Configures a specific inband or out-of-band interface or all inband or out-of-band interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>management-plane, on page 180</td>
<td>Configures management plane protection to allow and disallow protocols.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out-of-band, on page 181</td>
<td>Configures out-of-band interfaces or protocols and enters management plane protection out-of-band configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show mgmt-plane, on page 183</td>
<td>Displays the management plane.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Public Key Infrastructure Commands

This module describes the commands used to configure Public Key Infrastructure (PKI).

For detailed information about PKI concepts, configuration tasks, and examples, see the Implementing Certification Authority Interoperability on the Cisco IOS XR Software module in the Cisco IOS XR System Security Configuration Guide for the Cisco CRS Router.

- clear crypto ca certificates, page 189
- clear crypto ca crl, page 190
- crl optional (trustpoint), page 192
- crypto ca authenticate, page 194
- crypto ca cancel-enroll, page 196
- crypto ca enroll, page 197
- crypto ca import, page 199
- crypto ca trustpoint, page 200
- crypto key generate dsa, page 203
- crypto key generate rsa, page 205
- crypto key import authentication rsa, page 207
- crypto key zeroize dsa, page 208
- crypto key zeroize rsa, page 209
- description (trustpoint), page 211
- enrollment retry count, page 212
- enrollment retry period, page 214
- enrollment terminal, page 216
- enrollment url, page 217
- ip-address (trustpoint), page 219
- query url, page 221
- rsakeypair, page 223
• serial-number (trustpoint), page 224
• sftp-password (trustpoint), page 226
• sftp-username (trustpoint), page 228
• subject-name (trustpoint), page 230
• show crypto ca certificates, page 232
• show crypto ca crls, page 234
• show crypto key mypubkey dsa, page 235
• show crypto key mypubkey rsa, page 237
clear crypto ca certificates

To clear certificates associated with trustpoints that no longer exist in the configuration file, use the `clear crypto ca certificates` command.

```
clear crypto ca certificates trustpoint
```

**Syntax Description**

| `trustpoint` | Trustpoint name. |

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

If the router is loaded with a new configuration file and certificates in the new configuration file do not have their corresponding trustpoint configuration, use the `clear crypto ca certificates` command to clear the certificates associated with trustpoints that no longer exist in the configuration file.

The `clear crypto ca certificates` command deletes both certification authority (CA) and router certificates from the system.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to clear the certificates associated with trustpoints that no longer exist in the configuration file:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# clear crypto ca certificates tp_1
```
clear crypto ca crl

To clear all the Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) stored on the router, use the `clear crypto ca crl` command.

clear crypto ca crl

Syntax Description
This command has no keywords or arguments.

Command Default
No default behavior or values

Command Modes
EXEC

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines
Use the `clear crypto ca crl` command to clear all CRLs stored on the router. As a result, the router goes through the certification authorities (CAs) to download new CRLs for incoming certificate validation requests.

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples
The following example shows how to clear all CRLs stored on the router:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show crypto ca crls
CRL Entry
Issuer : cn=Certificate Manager,ou=HFR,o=Cisco Systems,l=San Jose,st=CA,c=US
Last Update : [UTC] Wed Jun  5 02:40:04 2002
Next Update : [UTC] Wed Jun  5 03:00:04 2002
CRL Distribution Point :
ldap://manager.cisco.com/CN=Certificate Manager,O=Cisco Systems
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# clear crypto ca crl
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show crypto ca crls
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show crypto ca crls</code>, on page 234</td>
<td>Displays the information about CRLs on the router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
clear crypto ca crl
crl optional (trustpoint)

To allow the certificates of other peers to be accepted without trying to obtain the appropriate CRL, use the **crl optional** command in trustpoint configuration mode. To return to the default behavior in which CRL checking is mandatory before your router can accept a certificate, use the **no** form of this command.

```
crl optional
no crl optional
```

**Syntax Description**
This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**
The router must have and check the appropriate CRL before accepting the certificate of another IP security peer.

**Command Modes**
Trustpoint configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
When your router receives a certificate from a peer, it searches its memory for the appropriate CRL. If the router finds the appropriate CRL, that CRL is used. Otherwise, the router downloads the CRL from either the certificate authority (CA) or from a CRL distribution point (CDP) as designated in the certificate of the peer. Your router will then check the CRL to ensure that the certificate that the peer sent has not been revoked. If the certificate appears on the CRL, your router cannot accept the certificate and will not authenticate the peer. To instruct the router not to download the CRL and treat the certificate as not revoked, use the **crl optional** command.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**
The following example declares a CA and permits your router to accept certificates without trying to obtain a CRL. This example also specifies a nonstandard retry period and retry count.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint myca
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment url http://ca_server
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment retry period 20
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment retry count 100
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# crl optional
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca trustpoint, on page 200</td>
<td>Configures a trusted point with a selected name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enrollment retry count, on page 212</td>
<td>Specifies how many times a router resends a certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enrollment retry period, on page 214</td>
<td>Specifies the wait period between certificate request retries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enrollment url, on page 217</td>
<td>Specifies the URL of the CA.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
crypto ca authenticate

To authenticate the certification authority (CA) by getting the certificate for the CA, use the `crypto ca authenticate` command.

`crypto ca authenticate ca-name`

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ca-name</th>
<th>Name of the CA Server.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The example output was modified.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

The `crypto ca authenticate` command is required when you initially configure CA support at your router. This command authenticates the CA to your router by obtaining the CA certificate, which contains the public key for the CA. For self-signed root CA, because the CA signs its own certificate, you should manually authenticate the CA public key by contacting the CA administrator when you use this command. The certificate fingerprint matching is done out-of-band (for example, phone call, and so forth).

Authenticating a second-level CA requires prior authentication of the root CA.

After the `crypto ca authenticate` command is issued and the CA does not respond by the specified timeout period, you must obtain terminal control again to re-enter the command.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The CA sends the certificate, and the router prompts the administrator to verify the certificate by checking the certificate fingerprint (a unique identifier). The CA administrator can also display the CA certificate fingerprint, so you should compare what the CA administrator sees to what the router displays on the screen. If the fingerprint on the display matches the fingerprint displayed by the CA administrator, you should accept the certificate as valid.
The following example shows that the router requests the CA certificate:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# crypto ca authenticate msiox
Retrieve Certificate from SFTP server? [yes/no]: yes
Read 860 bytes as CA certificate
  Subject:
    Name: CA2
    CN= CA2
  Issued By : cn=CA2
  Validity Start : 07:51:51 UTC Wed Jul 06 2005
  Validity End   : 08:00:43 UTC Tue Jul 06 2010
  CRL Distribution Point
    http://10.56.8.236/CertEnroll/CA2.crl
Certificate has the following attributes:
  Fingerprint: D0 44 36 48 CE 08 9D 29 04 C4 2D 69 80 55 53 A3
Do you accept this certificate? [yes/no]: yes
```

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#:Apr 10 00:28:52.324 : cepki[335]: %SECURITY-CEPKI-6-INFO : certificate database updated
Do you accept this certificate? [yes/no] yes
```
crypto ca cancel-enroll

To cancel a current enrollment request, use the `crypto ca cancel-enroll` command.

```
crypto ca cancel-enroll ca-name
```

**Syntax Description**

| ca-name | Name of the certification authority (CA). |

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `crypto ca enroll` command to request certificates from the CA for the Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) key pairs for the router defined by the `rsakeypair`, on page 223 command in trustpoint configuration mode. If no `rsakeypair`, on page 223 command is configured for the current trustpoint, the default RSA key pair is used for enrollment. This task is also known as enrolling with the CA. Use the `crypto ca cancel-enroll` command to cancel a current enrollment request.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to cancel a current enrollment request from a CA named `myca`:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# crypto ca cancel-enroll myca
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca enroll, on page 197</td>
<td>Obtains a router certificate from the CA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rsakeypair, on page 223</td>
<td>Specifies a named RSA key pair for a trustpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
crypto ca enroll

To obtain a router certificate from the certification authority (CA), use the **crypto ca enroll** command.

**crypto ca enroll ca-name**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th>ca-name</th>
<th>Name of the CA Server.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Command Default**: None

**Command Modes**: EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the **crypto ca enroll** command to request certificates from the CA for the Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) key pairs for the router defined by the **rsakeypair, on page 223** command in trustpoint configuration mode. If no rsakeypair, on page 223 command is configured for the current trustpoint, the default RSA key pair is used for enrollment. This task is also known as enrolling with the CA. (Enrolling and obtaining certificates are two separate events, but they both occur when the **crypto ca enroll** command is issued.) When using manual enrollment, these two operations occur separately.

The router needs a signed certificate from the CA for each of the RSA key pairs on the router; if you previously generated general-purpose keys, this command obtains the one certificate corresponding to the one general-purpose RSA key pair. If you previously generated special-usage keys, this command obtains two certificates corresponding to each of the special-usage RSA key pairs.

If you already have a certificate for your keys, you are unable to configure this command; instead, you are prompted to remove the existing certificate first. (You can remove existing certificates by removing the trustpoint configuration with the **no crypto ca trustpoint** command.)

The **crypto ca enroll** command is not saved in the router configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td></td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The following sample output is from the `crypto ca enroll` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# crypto ca enroll msiox
% Start certificate enrollment...
% Create a challenge password. You will need to verbally provide this password to the
% CA Administrator in order to revoke your certificate.
% For security reasons you password will not be saved in the configuration.
% Please make a note of it.
%Password re-enter Password:
  Fingerprint: 4F35ADC9 2791997A CE211437 AFC66CF7
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:May 29 18:49:15.572 : pki_cmd: %PKI-6-LOG_INFO : certificate request pending
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:May 29 18:52:17.705 : pki_get_cert: %PKI-6-LOG_INFO : certificate is granted
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca trustpoint, on page 200</td>
<td>Configures a trusted point with a selected name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rsakeypair, on page 223</td>
<td>Specifies a named RSA key pair for a trustpoint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
crypto ca import

To import a certification authority (CA) certificate manually through TFTP, SFTP, or cut and paste it at the terminal, use the **crypto ca import** command.

```
crypto ca import name certificate
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>name certificate</strong></td>
<td>Name of the certification authority (CA). This name is the same name used when the CA was declared with the <code>crypto ca trustpoint</code>, on page 200 command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to import a CA certificate through cut-and-paste. In this example, the certificate is myca.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# crypto ca import myca certificate
```
crypto ca trustpoint

To configure a trusted point with a selected name, use the `crypto ca trustpoint` command. To unconfigure a trusted point, use the `no` form of this command.

`crypto ca trustpoint ca-name`

`no crypto ca trustpoint ca-name`

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ca-name</code></td>
<td>Name of the CA.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The example was modified to include the <code>sftp-password</code> command and <code>sftp-username</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `crypto ca trustpoint` command to declare a CA.

This command allows you to configure a trusted point with a selected name so that your router can verify certificates issued to peers. Your router need not enroll with the CA that issued the certificates to the peers.

The `crypto ca trustpoint` command enters trustpoint configuration mode, in which you can specify characteristics for the CA with the following commands:

- `crl optional (trustpoint)`, on page 192 command—The certificates of other peers are accepted without trying to obtain the appropriate CRL.
- `enrollment retry count`, on page 212 command—The number of certificate request retries your router sends before giving up. Optional.
- `enrollment retry period`, on page 214 command—(Optional)—The time the router waits between sending certificate request retries.
- `enrollment url`, on page 217 command—(Optional)—The URL of the CA.
- `ip-address (trustpoint)`, on page 219 command—A dotted IP address that is included as an unstructured address in the certificate request.
• query url, on page 221 command—The directory server URL in which the Certificate Revocation List (CRL) is published. Only a string that begins with "ldap://" is accepted. Required only if your CA supports Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP).

• rsakeypair, on page 223 command—The named Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) key pair for this trustpoint.

• serial-number (trustpoint), on page 224 command—Router serial number in the certificate request.

• sftp-password (trustpoint), on page 226 command—FTP secure password.

• sftp-username (trustpoint), on page 228 command—FTP secure username.

• subject-name (trustpoint), on page 230 command—Subject name in the certificate request.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows how to use the `crypto ca trustpoint` command to create a trustpoint:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint msiox
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# sftp-password xxxxxx
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# sftp-username tmordeko
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment url
sftp://192.168.254.254/tftpboot/tmordeko/CAcert
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# rsakeypair label-2
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crl optional (trustpoint), on page 192</td>
<td>Allows the certificates of other peers to be accepted without trying to obtain the appropriate CRL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enrollment retry count, on page 212</td>
<td>Specifies how many times a router resends a certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enrollment retry period, on page 214</td>
<td>Specifies the wait period between certificate request retries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enrollment url, on page 217</td>
<td>Specifies the URL of the CA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query url, on page 221</td>
<td>Specifies the LDAP URL of the CRL distribution point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rsakeypair, on page 223</td>
<td>Specifies a named RSA key pair for this trustpoint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sftp-password (trustpoint), on page 226</td>
<td>Secures the FTP password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sftp-username (trustpoint), on page 228</td>
<td>Secures the FTP username.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
crypto key generate dsa

To generate Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA) key pairs, use the `crypto key generate dsa` command.

crypto key generate dsa

**Syntax Description**
This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**
None

**Command Modes**
EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
Use the `crypto key generate dsa` command to generate DSA key pairs for your router.

DSA keys are generated in pairs—one public DSA key and one private DSA key.

If your router already has DSA keys when you issue this command, you are warned and prompted to replace the existing keys with new keys.

To remove the DSA key generated, use the `crypto key zeroize dsa` command.

**Examples**
The following example shows how to generate a 512-bit DSA key:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# crypto key generate dsa
The name for the keys will be: the_default
Choose the size of your DSA key modulus. Modulus size can be 512, 768, or 1024 bits.
Choosing a key modulus
How many bits in the modulus [1024]: 512
Generating DSA keys...
Done w/ crypto generate keypair [OK]
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>crypto key zeroize dsa</code>, on page 208</td>
<td>Deletes a DSA key pair from your router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>show crypto key mypubkey dsa</code>, on page 235</td>
<td>Displays the DSA public keys for your router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
crypto key generate rsa

To generate a Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) key pair, use the **crypto key generate rsa** command.

**crypto key generate rsa [usage-keys] [general-keys] [keypair-label]**

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Usage</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>usage-keys</td>
<td>(Optional) Generates separate RSA key pairs for signing and encryption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general-keys</td>
<td>(Optional) Generates a general-purpose RSA key pair for signing and encryption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keypair-label</td>
<td>(Optional) RSA key pair label that names the RSA key pairs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

RSA key pairs do not exist. If the **usage-keys** keyword is not used, general-purpose keys are generated. If no RSA label is specified, the key is generated as the default RSA key.

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the **crypto key generate rsa** command to generate RSA key pairs for your router.

RSA keys are generated in pairs—one public RSA key and one private RSA key.

If your router already has RSA keys when you issue this command, you are warned and prompted to replace the existing keys with new keys. The keys generated by this command are saved in the secure NVRAM (which is not displayed to the user or backed up to another device).

To remove an RSA key, use the **crypto key zeroize rsa** command.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to generate an RSA key pair:

```plaintext
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# crypto key generate rsa
```
The name for the keys will be: the_default

Choose the size of the key modulus in the range of 360 to 2048 for your General Purpose Keys. Choosing a key modulus greater than 512 may take a few minutes.

How many bits in the modulus[1024]: <return>

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto key zeroize rsa, on page 209</td>
<td>Deletes the RSA key pair for your router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show crypto key mypubkey rsa, on page 237</td>
<td>Displays the RSA public keys for your router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
crypto key import authentication rsa

To import a public key using the Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) method, use the `crypto key import authentication rsa` command.

```plaintext
crypto key import authentication rsa path
```

**Syntax Description**

| path | (Optional) This denotes the path to the RSA public key file. |

| Command Default | None |

| Command Modes | EXEC |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command History</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.9.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

1. Use ssh-keygen generation mechanism to generate keys using either a LINUX or UNIX client. This creates two keys: one public and one private.
2. Remove the comment and other header tag from the keys, except the base64 encoded text.
3. Decode the base64 encoded text, and use the for authentication.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example displays how to import a public key:

```plaintext
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:k2#crypto key import authentication rsa
```
crypto key zeroize dsa

To delete the Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA) key pair from your router, use the crypto key zeroize dsa command.

crypto key zeroize dsa

Syntax Description

This command has no keywords or arguments.

Command Default

None

Command Modes

EXEC

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines

Use the crypto key zeroize dsa command to delete the DSA key pair that was previously generated by your router.

Examples

The following example shows how to delete DSA keys from your router:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# crypto key zeroize dsa
% Keys to be removed are named the_default
Do you really want to remove these keys? [yes/no]: yes
```

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto key generate dsa, on page 203</td>
<td>Generates DSA key pairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show crypto key mypubkey dsa, on page 235</td>
<td>Displays the DSA public keys for your router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
crypto key zeroize rsa

To delete all Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) keys from the router, use the crypto key zeroize rsa command.

crypto key zeroize rsa [ keypair-label ]

**Syntax Description**

keypair-label (Optional) Names the RSA key pair to be removed.

**Command Default**

If the key pair label is not specified, the default RSA key pair is removed.

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the crypto key zeroize rsa command to delete all RSA keys that were previously generated by the router. After issuing this command, you must perform two additional tasks:

- Ask the certification authority (CA) administrator to revoke the certificates for the router at the CA; you must supply the challenge password you created when you originally obtained the router certificates with the cryptoca enroll, on page 197 command CA.
- Manually remove the certificates from the configuration using the clear crypto ca certificates command.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to delete the general-purpose RSA key pair that was previously generated:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# crypto key zeroize rsa key1
% Keys to be removed are named key1
Do you really want to remove these keys? [yes/no]: yes
```
## Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clear crypto ca certificates, on page 189</td>
<td>Clears certificates associated with trustpoints that no longer exist in the configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca enroll, on page 197</td>
<td>Obtains a router certificate from the CA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto key generate rsa, on page 205</td>
<td>Generates RSA key pairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show crypto key mypubkey rsa, on page 237</td>
<td>Displays the RSA public keys for your router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
description (trustpoint)

To create a description of a trustpoint, use the `description` command in trustpoint configuration mode. To delete a trustpoint description, use the `no` form of this command.

```
description string
no description
```

**Syntax Description**

| string | Character string describing the trustpoint. |

**Command Default**

The default description is blank.

**Command Modes**

Trustpoint configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `description` command in the trustpoint configuration mode to create a description for a trustpoint.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to create a trustpoint description:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint myca
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# description this is the primary trustpoint
```
enrollment retry count

To specify the number of times a router resends a certificate request to a certification authority (CA), use the `enrollment retry count` command in trustpoint configuration mode. To reset the retry count to the default, use the `no` form of this command.

```
enrollment retry count number
no enrollment retry count number
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>number</code></td>
<td>Number of times the router resends a certificate request when the router does not receive a certificate from the previous request. The range is from 1 to 100.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

If no retry count is specified, the default value is 10.

**Command Modes**

Trustpoint configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

After requesting a certificate, the router waits to receive a certificate from the CA. If the router does not receive a certificate within a specified time (the retry period), the router sends another certificate request. The router continues to send requests until it receives a valid certificate, the CA returns an enrollment error, or the configured number of retries (the retry count) is exceeded.

To reset the retry count to the default of 10, use the `no` form of this command. Setting the retry count to 0 indicates an infinite number of retries. The router sends the CA certificate requests until a valid certificate is received (there is no limit to the number of retries).

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to declare a CA, change the retry period to 10 minutes, and change the retry count to 60 retries. The router resends the certificate request every 10 minutes until receipt of the certificate.
or approximately 10 hours pass since the original request was sent, whichever occurs first (10 minutes x 60 
tries = 600 minutes = 10 hours).

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint myca
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment url http://ca_server
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment retry period 10
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment retry count 60
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Commands</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crl optional (trustpoint), on page 192</td>
<td>Allows the certificates of other peers to be accepted without trying to obtain the appropriate CRL.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca trustpoint, on page 200</td>
<td>Configures a trusted point with a selected name.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enrollment retry period, on page 214</td>
<td>Specifies the wait period between certificate request retries.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enrollment url, on page 217</td>
<td>Specifies the certification authority (CA) location by naming the CA URL.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
enrollment retry period

To specify the wait period between certificate request retries, use the `enrollment retry period` command in trustpoint configuration mode. To reset the retry period to the default of 1 minute, use the `no` form of this command.

```
enrollment retry period minutes
no enrollment retry period minutes
```

**Syntax Description**

`minutes` Period (in minutes) between certificate requests issued to a certification authority (CA) from the router. The range is from 1 to 60 minutes.

**Command Default**

`minutes: 1`

**Command Modes**

Trustpoint configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

After requesting a certificate, the router waits to receive a certificate from the CA. If the router does not receive a certificate within a specified time (the retry period), the router sends another certificate request. The router continues to send requests until it receives a valid certificate, the CA returns an enrollment error, or the configured number of retries (the retry count) is exceeded.

The router sends the CA another certificate request every minute until a valid certificate is received. (By default, the router sends ten requests, but you can change the number of permitted retries with the `enrollment retry count` command.)

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to declare a CA and change the retry period to 5 minutes:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint myca
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment retry period 5
```
### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>crl optional (trustpoint), on page 192</code></td>
<td>Allows the certificates of other peers to be accepted without trying to obtain the appropriate CRL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>crypto ca trustpoint, on page 200</code></td>
<td>Configures a trusted point with a selected name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enrollment retry count, on page 212</code></td>
<td>Specifies the number of times a router resends a certificate request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
enrollment terminal

To specify manual cut-and-paste certificate enrollment, use the **enrollment terminal** command in trustpoint configuration mode. To delete a current enrollment request, use the **no** form of this command.

```
enrollment terminal
no enrollment terminal
```

**Syntax Description**

This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Trustpoint configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

You can manually cut and paste certificate requests and certificates when you do not have a network connection between the router and certification authority (CA). When the **enrollment terminal** command is enabled, the router displays the certificate request on the console terminal, which allows you to enter the issued certificate on the terminal.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to manually specify certificate enrollment through cut-and-paste. In this example, the CA trustpoint is myca.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint myca
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment terminal
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca trustpoint, on page 200</td>
<td>Configures a trusted point with a selected name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
enrollment url

To specify the certification authority (CA) location by naming the CA URL, use the enrollment url command in trustpoint configuration mode. To remove the CA URL from the configuration, use the no form of this command.

```
enrollment url CA-URL
no enrollment url CA-URL
```

**Syntax Description**

- **CA-URL**: URL of the CA server. The URL string must start with `http://CA_name`, where `CA_name` is the host Domain Name System (DNS) name or IP address of the CA (for example, `http://ca-server`).

  If the CA cgi-bin script location is not `/cgi-bin/pkiclient.exe` at the CA (the default CA cgi-bin script location), you must also include the nonstandard script location in the URL, in the form of `http://CA-name/script-location`, where `script-location` is the full path to the CA scripts.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Trustpoint configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>Both SFTP and TFTP enrollment methods were added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the enrollment url command to specify the CA URL. This command is required when you declare a CA with the crypto ca trustpoint command. The URL must include the CA script location if the CA scripts are not loaded into the default cgi-bin script location. The CA administrator should be able to tell you where the CA scripts are located.

This table lists the available enrollment methods.

**Table 11: Certificate Enrollment Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enrollment Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SFTP</td>
<td>Enroll through SFTP: file system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TFTP</td>
<td>Enroll through TFTP: file system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If you are using TFTP for enrollment, the URL must be in the form tftp://certserver/file_specification. (The file specification is optional.)

TFTP enrollment sends the enrollment request and retrieves the certificate of the CA and the certificate of the router. If the file specification is included in the URL, the router appends an extension to the file specification.

To change the CA URL, repeat the enrollment url command to overwrite the previous URL.

---

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Examples**

The following example shows the absolute minimum configuration required to declare a CA:

```plaintext
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)#
crypto ca trustpoint myca
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)#
enrollment url http://ca.domain.com/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
```

---

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crl optional (trustpoint), on page 192</td>
<td>Allows the certificates of other peers to be accepted without trying to obtain the appropriate CRL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca trustpoint, on page 200</td>
<td>Configures a trusted point with a selected name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip-address (trustpoint), on page 219</td>
<td>Specifies a dotted IP address that is included as an unstructured address in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ip-address (trustpoint)**

To specify a dotted IP address that is included as an unstructured address in the certificate request, use the `ip-address` command in trustpoint configuration mode. To restore the default behavior, use the `no` form of this command.

```
ip-address {ip-address| none}
no ip-address {ip-address| none}
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ip-address</td>
<td>Dotted IP address that is included in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>none</td>
<td>Specifies that an IP address is not included in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

You are prompted for the IP address during certificate enrollment.

**Command Modes**

Trustpoint configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `ip-address` command to include the IP address of the specified interface in the certificate request or to specify that an IP address should not be included in the certificate request.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to include the IP address of the Ethernet-0 interface in the certificate request for the trustpoint frog:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint frog
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment url http://frog.phoobin.com
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# subject-name OU=Spiral Dept., O=tiedye.com
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# ip-address 172.19.72.120
```

The following example shows that an IP address is not to be included in the certificate request:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# no ip-address 172.19.72.120
```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint myca
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment url http://10.3.0.7:80
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# subject-name CN=subject1, OU=PKI, O=Cisco Systems, C=US
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# ip-address none

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crl optional (trustpoint), on page 192</td>
<td>Allows the certificates of other peers to be accepted without trying to obtain the appropriate CRL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca trustpoint, on page 200</td>
<td>Configures a trusted point with a selected name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enrollment url, on page 217</td>
<td>Specifies the certification authority (CA) location by naming the CA URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serial-number (trustpoint), on page 224</td>
<td>Specifies whether the router serial number should be included in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject-name (trustpoint), on page 230</td>
<td>Specifies the subject name in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
query url

To specify Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) protocol support, use the `query url` command in trustpoint configuration mode. To remove the query URL from the configuration, use the `no` form of this command.

```
query url LDAP-URL
no query url LDAP-URL
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LDAP-URL</th>
<th>URL of the LDAP server (for example, ldap://another-server).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This URL must be in the form of ldap://server-name where server-name is the host Domain Name System (DNS) name or IP address of the LDAP server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**
The URL provided in the router certificate’s CRLDistributionPoint extension is used.

**Command Modes**
Trustpoint configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
LDAP is a query protocol used when the router retrieves the Certificate Revocation List (CRL). The certification authority (CA) administrator should be able to tell you whether the CA supports LDAP; if the CA supports LDAP, the CA administrator can tell you the LDAP location where certificates and certificate revocation lists should be retrieved.

To change the query URL, repeat the `query url` command to overwrite the previous URL.

**Examples**
The following example shows the configuration required to declare a CA when the CA supports LDAP:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint myca
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# query url ldap://my-ldap.domain.com
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>crypto ca trustpoint</code>, on page 200</td>
<td>Configures a trusted point with a selected name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**rsakeypair**

To specify a named Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) key pair for this trustpoint, use the **rsakeypair** command in trustpoint configuration mode. To reset the RSA key pair to the default, use the **no** form of this command.

```
rsakeypair keypair-label
no rsakeypair keypair-label
```

**Syntax Description**

| keypair-label | RSA key pair label that names the RSA key pairs. |

**Command Default**

If the RSA key pair is not specified, the default RSA key is used for this trustpoint.

**Command Modes**

Trustpoint configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the **rsakeypair** command to specify a named RSA key pair generated using the **crypto key generate rsa** command for this trustpoint.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to specify the named RSA key pair key1 for the trustpoint myca:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint myca
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# rsakeypair key1
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto key generate rsa, on page 205</td>
<td>Generates RSA key pairs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
serial-number (trustpoint)

To specify whether the router serial number should be included in the certificate request, use the `serial-number` command in trustpoint configuration mode. To restore the default behavior, use the `no` form of this command.

```
serial-number [none]
no serial-number
```

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>none</td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies that a serial number is not included in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Command Default

You are prompted for the serial number during certificate enrollment.

### Command Modes

Trustpoint configuration

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

Before you can use the `serial-number` command, you must enable the `crypto ca trustpoint` command, which declares the certification authority (CA) that your router should use and enters trustpoint configuration mode.

Use this command to specify the router serial number in the certificate request, or use the `none` keyword to specify that a serial number should not be included in the certificate request.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows how to omit a serial number from the root certificate request:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# crypto ca trustpoint root
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment url http://10.3.0.7:80
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# ip-address none
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# serial-number none
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# subject-name ON=Jack, OU=PKI, O=Cisco Systems, C=US
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>crl optional (trustpoint), on page 192</code></td>
<td>Allows the certificates of other peers to be accepted without trying to obtain the appropriate CRL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>crypto ca trustpoint, on page 200</code></td>
<td>Configures a trusted point with a selected name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enrollment url, on page 217</code></td>
<td>Specifies the certification authority (CA) location by naming the CA URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ip-address (trustpoint), on page 219</code></td>
<td>Specifies a dotted IP address that is included as an unstructured address in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>subject-name (trustpoint), on page 230</code></td>
<td>Specifies the subject name in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**sftp-password (trustpoint)**

To secure the FTP password, use the `sftp-password` command in trustpoint configuration mode. To disable this feature, use the `no` form of this command.

```plaintext
sftp-password {clear text|clear text|password encrypted string}
no sftp-password {clear text|clear text|password encrypted string}
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Syntax Description</strong></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>clear text</code></td>
<td>Clear text password and is encrypted only for display purposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>password encrypted string</code></td>
<td>Enters the password in an encrypted form.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**
The `clear text` argument is the default behavior.

**Command Modes**
Trustpoint configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
Passwords are stored in encrypted form and not as plain text. The command-line interface (CLI) contains the provisioning (for example, clear and encrypted) to specify the password input.

The username and password are required as part of the SFTP protocol. If you specify the URL that begins with the prefix (sftp://), you must configure the parameters for the `sftp-password` command under the trustpoint. Otherwise, the certificate from the SFTP server, which is used for manual certificate enrollment, cannot be retrieved.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**
The following example shows how to secure the FTP password in an encrypted form:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint msiox
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# sftp-password password xxxxxx
```
## Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca trustpoint, on page 200</td>
<td>Configures a trusted point with a selected name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sftp-username (trustpoint), on page 228</td>
<td>Secures the FTP username.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**sftp-username (trustpoint)**

To secure the FTP username, use the `sftp-username` command in trustpoint configuration mode. To disable this feature, use the `no` form of this command.

```
sftp-username username
no sftp-username username
```

**Syntax Description**

```
username
Name of the user.
```

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Trustpoint configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

The `sftp-username` command is used only if the URL has (sftp://) in the prefix. If (sftp://) is not specified in the prefix, the manual certificate enrollment using SFTP fails.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to secure the FTP username:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint msiox
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# sftp-username tmordeko
```

**Task ID**

```
Task ID | Operations
-------|-------------
crypto  | read, write
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca trustpoint, on page 200</td>
<td>Configures a trusted point with a selected name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sftp-password (trustpoint), on page 226</td>
<td>Secures the FTP password.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Public Key Infrastructure Commands

sftp-username (trustpoint)
subject-name (trustpoint)

To specify the subject name in the certificate request, use the `subject-name` command in trustpoint configuration mode. To clear any subject name from the configuration, use the `no` form of this command.

```
subject-name x.500-name
no subject-name x.500-name
```

**Syntax Description**

```
x.500-name
```

(Optional) Specifies the subject name used in the certificate request.

**Command Default**

If the `x.500-name` argument is not specified, the fully qualified domain name (FQDN), which is the default subject name, is used.

**Command Modes**

Trustpoint configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.4.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Before you can use the `subject-name` command, you must enable the `crypto ca trustpoint` command, which declares the certification authority (CA) that your router should use and enters trustpoint configuration mode.

The `subject-name` command is an attribute that can be set for automatic enrollment; thus, issuing this command prevents you from being prompted for a subject name during enrollment.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to specify the subject name for the frog certificate:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto ca trustpoint frog
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# enrollment url http://frog.phoobin.com
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# subject-name OU=Spiral Dept., O=tiedye.com
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-trustp)# ip-address 172.19.72.120
```
### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>crl optional (trustpoint), on page 192</code></td>
<td>Allows the certificates of other peers to be accepted without trying to obtain the appropriate CRL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>crypto ca trustpoint, on page 200</code></td>
<td>Configures a trusted point with a selected name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>enrollment url, on page 217</code></td>
<td>Specifies the certification authority (CA) location by naming the CA URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ip-address (trustpoint), on page 219</code></td>
<td>Specifies a dotted IP address that is included as an unstructured address in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>serial-number (trustpoint), on page 224</code></td>
<td>Specifies whether the router serial number should be included in the certificate request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show crypto ca certificates

To display information about your certificate and the certification authority (CA) certificate, use the `show crypto ca certificates` command.

**show crypto ca certificates**

**Syntax Description**
This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**
None

**Command Modes**
EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.6.0</td>
<td>The example output was modified.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
Use the `show crypto ca certificates` command to display information about the following certificates:

- Your certificate, if you have requested one from the CA (see the `crypto ca enroll` command).
- CA certificate, if you have received the certificate (see the `crypto ca authenticate` command).

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**
The following sample output is from the `show crypto ca certificates` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show crypto ca certificates
Trustpoint : msiox

CAa certificate
  Subject:
    Name: CA2
    CN= CA2
  Issued By :
    cn=CA2
  Validity Start : 07:51:51 UTC Wed Jul 06 2005
  Validity End : 08:00:43 UTC Tue Jul 06 2010
  CRL Distribution Point
```
Router certificate
Status: Available
Key usage: Signature
Serial Number: 38:6B:C6:B8:00:04:00:00:01:45
Subject:
  Name: tdlr533.cisco.com
  IP Address: 3.1.53.3
  Serial Number: 8cd96b64
Issued By:
  cn=CA2
Validity Start: 08:30:03 UTC Mon Apr 10 2006
Validity End: 08:40:03 UTC Tue Apr 10 2007
CRL Distribution Point
  http://10.56.8.236/CertEnroll/CA2.crl
Associated Trustpoint: MS-IOX

Router certificate
Status: Available
Key usage: Encryption
Serial Number: 38:6D:2B:A7:00:04:00:00:01:46
Subject:
  Name: tdlr533.cisco.com
  IP Address: 3.1.53.3
  Serial Number: 8cd96b64
Issued By:
  cn=CA2
Validity Start: 08:31:34 UTC Mon Apr 10 2006
Validity End: 08:41:34 UTC Tue Apr 10 2007
CRL Distribution Point
  http://10.56.8.236/CertEnroll/CA2.crl
Associated Trustpoint: msiox

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca authenticate, on page 194</td>
<td>Authenticaes the CA by obtaining the certificate of the CA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca enroll, on page 197</td>
<td>Obtains the certificates of your router from the CA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca import, on page 199</td>
<td>Imports a certification authority (CA) certificate manually through TFTP, SFTP, or cut and paste it at the terminal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto ca trustpoint, on page 200</td>
<td>Configures a trustpoint with a selected name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show crypto ca crls

To display information about the local cache Certificate Revocation List (CRL), use the show crypto ca crls command.

show crypto ca crls

Syntax Description

This command has no keywords or arguments.

Command Default

None

Command Modes

EXEC

XR EXEC

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following sample output is from the show crypto ca crls command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show crypto ca crls
CRL Entry
===============================================
Issuer : cn=xyz-w2k-root,ou=HFR,o=Cisco System,l=San Jose,st=CA,c=US
Last Update : [UTC] Thu Jan 10 01:01:14 2002
CRL Distribution Point :
http://xyz-w2k.cisco.com/CertEnroll/xyz-w2k-root.crl
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clear crypto ca crl, on page 190</td>
<td>Clears all the CRLs stored on the router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show crypto key mypubkey dsa

To display the Directory System Agent (DSA) public keys for your router, use the `show crypto key mypubkey dsa` command.

```
show crypto key mypubkey dsa
```

**Syntax Description**

This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following sample output is from the `show crypto key mypubkey dsa` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show crypto key mypubkey dsa

Key label: mykey
Type: RSA General purpose
Size: 1024
Created: 17:33:23 UTC Thu Sep 18 2003
Data: 3081F230 81AA0605 2B0E0302 0C3081A0 02020200 024100C8 A36B6179 56B8D620 1F77595C 32EF3004 577A9F79 04ABDA4 89FB969D 53C04E7E 5491ED4E 120C657C 610576E5 841696B6 0948846C C92F56E5 B4921458 70FC4902 1500AB61 5C0D63D3 EB082BB9 F16030C5 AA0B5DA DFE50240 73F661EA 9F579E77 B413DBC4 9047B4F2 10A1CFCB 14D9B857 3E0BBA97 9B5120AD F52BBCD7 15B63454 8CB54885 92B6C9DF 7DC27768 FD296844 42024945 5BE6C81A 03430002 4071B49E F80F9E4B AF2B6E7 AA817460 87EFD503 C668AD8C D606050B 225C277 70CA0974 8072D7D7 2ADDDE42 329FE896 AB015ED1 3A414254 6935FDCA 0043BA4F 66
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto key generate dsa, on page 203</td>
<td>Generates DSA key pairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>crypto key zeroize dsa</code></td>
<td>Deletes all DSA keys from the router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show crypto key mypubkey rsa

To display the Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) public keys for your router, use the show crypto key mypubkey rsa command.

show crypto key mypubkey rsa

Syntax Description
This command has no keywords or arguments.

Command Default
None

Command Modes
EXEC

Command History
Release 2.0
This command was introduced.

Usage Guidelines

Examples
The following is sample output from the show crypto key mypubkey rsa command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show crypto key mypubkey rsa

Key label: mykey
Type : RSA General purpose
Size : 1024
Created : 07:46:15 UTC Fri Mar 17 2006
Data :
30819F30 0D06092A 864886F7 0D010101 05000381 8D003081 89028181 00CF8CDF
5BFC0A55 DA4D164D F6ED87BB 926B1DDE 0383027F B0A71BCC6 9D5592C4 5B0676E
35CD19B7 1C973A46 62CC5F8C 82BD596C F292410F 8E83B753 4BA71BAC 41A6B6D0
F34A2499 EDE11639 F88B4210 B2A0CF5F DD678360 DBBB7DE1 02AB5722 96D947D5
76CF5BCC D9A2B039F D024B100 7F8BFDF9C C8B0B791 10A909DE41 00FB6F40 95020301
0001

Key label: the_default
Type : RSA General purpose
Size : 512
Created : 07:46:15 UTC Fri Mar 17 2006
Data :
305C300D 0D06092A 864886F7 0D010101 05000381 8D003081 89028181 00CF8CDF
5BFC0A55 DA4D164D F6ED87BB 926B1DDE 0383027F B0A71BCC6 9D5592C4 5B0676E
35CD19B7 1C973A46 62CC5F8C 82BD596C F292410F 8E83B753 4BA71BAC 41A6B6D0
F34A2499 EDE11639 F88B4210 B2A0CF5F DD678360 DBBB7DE1 02AB5722 96D947D5
76CF5BCC D9A2B039F D024B100 7F8BFDF9C C8B0B791 10A909DE41 00FB6F40 95020301
0001
```
### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto key generate rsa, on page 205</td>
<td>Generates RSA key pairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypto key zeroize rsa, on page 209</td>
<td>Deletes all RSA keys from the router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Software Authentication Manager Commands

This module describes the Cisco IOS XR software commands used to configure Software Authentication Manager (SAM).

For detailed information about SAM concepts, configuration tasks, and examples, see the Configuring Software Authentication Manager on the Cisco IOS XR Software module in the Cisco IOS XR System Security Configuration Guide for the Cisco CRS Router Software configuration module.

- sam add certificate, page 240
- sam delete certificate, page 242
- sam prompt-interval, page 244
- sam verify, page 246
- show sam certificate, page 248
- show sam crl, page 252
- show sam log, page 254
- show sam package, page 256
- show sam sysinfo, page 259
**sam add certificate**

To add a new certificate to the certificate table, use the `sam add certificate` command.

```
sam add certificate filepath location {trust|untrust}
```

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>filepath</code></td>
<td>Absolute path to the source location of the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>location</code></td>
<td>Storage site of the certificate. Use one of the following: <code>root</code>, <code>mem</code>, <code>disk0</code>, <code>disk1</code>, or other flash device name on router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>trust</code></td>
<td>Adds the certificate to the certificate table without validation by the Software Authentication Manager (SAM). To add a root certificate, you must use the <code>trust</code> keyword. Adding a root certificate with the <code>untrust</code> keyword is not allowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>untrust</code></td>
<td>Adds the certificate to the certificate table after the SAM has validated it. Adding a root certificate with the <code>untrust</code> keyword is not allowed. To add a root certificate, you must use the <code>trust</code> keyword.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Command Default

None

### Command Modes

EXEC

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

For security reasons, the `sam add certificate` command can be issued only from the console or auxiliary port of the networking device; the command cannot be issued from a Telnet connection to any other interface on the networking device.

The certificate must be copied to the network device before it can be added to the certificate table. If the certificate is already present in the certificate table, the SAM rejects the attempt to add it.

When adding root certificates, follow these guidelines:

- Only the certificate authority (CA) root certificate can be added to the root location.
- To add a root certificate, you must use the `trust` keyword. Adding the root certificate with the `untrust` keyword is not allowed.

Use of the `trust` keyword assumes that you received the new certificate from a source that you trust, and therefore have enough confidence in its authenticity to bypass validation by the SAM. One example of acquiring
a certificate from a trusted source is downloading it from a CA server (such as Cisco.com) that requires user authentication. Another example is acquiring the certificate from a person or entity that you can verify, such as by checking the identification badge for a person. If you bypass the validation protection offered by the SAM, you must verify the identity and integrity of the certificate by some other valid process.

Certificates added to the memory (mem) location validate software installed in memory. Certificates added to the disk0 or disk1 location validate software installed on those devices, respectively.

If the **sam add certificate** command fails with a message indicating that the certificate has expired, the networking device clock may have been set incorrectly. Use the **show clock** command to determine if the clock is set correctly.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows how to add the certificate found at `/bootflash/ca.bin` to the certificate table in the root location without first validating the certificate:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# sam add certificate /bootflash/ca.bin root trust
SAM: Successful adding certificate /bootflash/ca.bin
```

The following example shows how to add the certificate found at `/bootflash/css.bin` to the certificate table in the memory (mem) location after validating the certificate:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# sam add certificate /bootflash/css.bin mem untrust
SAM: Successful adding certificate /bootflash/css.bin
```
**sam delete certificate**

To delete a certificate from the certificate table, use the `sam delete certificate` command.

```plaintext
sam delete certificate location certificate-index
```

**Syntax Description**

- `location`  
  Storage site of the certificate. Use one of the following: `root`, `mem`, `disk0`, `disk1`, or other flash device name on the router.

- `certificate-index`  
  Number in the range from 1 to 65000.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

For security reasons, the `sam delete certificate` command can be issued only from the console port of the networking device; the command cannot be issued from a Telnet connection to any other interface on the networking device.

Use the `show sam certificate summary` command to display certificates by their index numbers.

Because the certificate authority (CA) certificate must not be unknowingly deleted, the Software Authentication Manager (SAM) prompts the user for confirmation when an attempt is made to delete the CA certificate.

If a certificate stored on the system is no longer valid (for example, if the certificate has expired), you can use the `sam delete certificate` command to remove the certificate from the list.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to delete the certificate identified by the index number 2 from the memory location:

```plaintext
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# sam delete certificate mem 2
```
SAM: Successful deleting certificate index 2

The following example shows how to cancel the deletion of the certificate identified by the index number 1 from the root location:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# sam delete certificate root 1

Do you really want to delete the root CA certificate (Y/N): N
SAM: Delete certificate (index 1) canceled

The following example shows how to delete the certificate identified by the index number 1 from the root location:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# sam delete certificate root 1

Do you really want to delete the root CA certificate (Y/N): Y
SAM: Successful deleting certificate index 1

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sam add certificate, on page 240</td>
<td>Adds a new certificate to the certificate table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show sam certificate, on page 248</td>
<td>Displays records in the certificate table, including the location of the certificates stored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**sam prompt-interval**

To set the interval that the Software Authentication Manager (SAM) waits after prompting the user for input when it detects an abnormal condition at boot time and to determine how the SAM responds when it does not receive user input within the specified interval, use the **sam prompt-interval** command. To reset the prompt interval and response to their default values, use the no form of this command.

```
sam prompt-interval time-interval {proceed|terminate}
no sam prompt-interval time-interval {proceed|terminate}
```

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>time-interval</th>
<th>Prompt time, in the range from 0 to 300 seconds.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>proceed</td>
<td>Causes the SAM to respond as if it had received a “yes” when the prompt interval expires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terminate</td>
<td>Causes the SAM to respond as if it had received a “no” when the prompt interval expires.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Command Default

The default response is for the SAM to wait 10 seconds and then terminate the authentication task.

### Command Modes

Global configuration

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

Use the **sam prompt-interval** command to control the action taken when the system detects an exception condition, such as an expired certificate during initialization of the SAM at boot time. The following message appears when the software detects the abnormal condition of a certificate authority (CA) certificate expired:

```
SAM detects expired CA certificate. Continue at risk (Y/N):
```

The SAM waits at the prompt until you respond or the time interval controlled by the **sam prompt-interval** command expires, whichever is the earlier event. If you respond “N” to the prompt, the boot process is allowed to complete, but no packages can be installed.

The following message appears when the software detects the abnormal condition of a Code Signing Server (CSS) certificate expired:

```
SAM detects CA certificate (Code Signing Server Certificate Authority) has expired. The validity period is Oct 17, 2000 01:46:24 UTC - Oct 17, 2015 01:51:47 UTC. Continue at risk? (Y/N) [Default:N w/in 10]:
```
If you do not respond to the prompt, the SAM waits for the specified interval to expire, and then it takes the action specified in the **sam prompt-interval** command (either the **proceed** or **terminate** keyword).

If you enter the command with the **proceed** keyword, the SAM waits for the specified interval to expire, and then it proceeds as if you had given a “yes” response to the prompt.

If you enter the command with the **terminate** keyword, the SAM waits for the specified interval to expire, and then it proceeds as if you had given a “no” response to the prompt. This use of the command keeps the system from waiting indefinitely when the system console is unattended.

**Note**

After the software has booted up, the *time-interval* argument set using this command has no effect. This value applies at boot time only.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

The following example shows how to tell the SAM to wait 30 seconds for a user response to a prompt and then terminate the requested SAM processing task:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# sam prompt-interval 30 terminate
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show sam sysinfo, on page 259</td>
<td>Displays the current status information for the SAM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sam verify

To use the Message Digest 5 (MD5) hash algorithm to verify the integrity of the software component on a flash memory card and ensure that it has not been tampered with during transit, use the `sam verify` command.

```
sam verify {location|file-system} {MD5|SHA [ digest ]}
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>location</code></td>
<td>Name of the flash memory card slot, either disk0 or disk1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>file-system</code></td>
<td>Absolute path to the file to be verified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>MD5</code></td>
<td>Specifies a one-way hashing algorithm to generate a 128-bit hash (or message digest) of the specified software component.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>SHA</code></td>
<td>Specifies the Secure Hash Algorithm, a hashing algorithm that takes a message of less than 264 bits in length and produces a 160-bit message digest. The large message digest provides security against brute-force collision and inversion attacks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>digest</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Message digest generated by the hashing algorithm, to be compared in determining the integrity of the software component.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `sam verify` command to generate a message digest for a given device. The message digest is useful for determining whether software on a flash memory card has been tampered with during transit. The command generates a hash code that can be used to compare the integrity of the software between the time it was shipped and the time you received it.

For example, if you are given a flash memory card with preinstalled software and a previously generated MD5 message digest, you can verify the integrity of the software using the `sam verify` command:

```
sam verify device MD5 digest
```

The `device` argument specifies the flash device. The `digest` argument specifies the message digest supplied by the originator of the software.

If the message digest matches the message digest generated by the `sam verify` command, the software component is valid.
You should calculate the hash code on the contents of the flash memory code at the destination networking device using a different set of files from the one loaded on the flash memory card. It is possible for an unauthorized person to use the same software version to produce the desired (matching) hash code and thereby disguise that someone has tampered with the new software.

### Examples

The example shows a third `sam verify` command, issued with a mismatched message digest, to show the Software Authentication Manager (SAM) response to a mismatch. The following example shows how to use MD5 to generate a message digest on the entire file system on the flash memory card in slot 0 and then use that message digest as input to perform the digest comparison:

```plaintext
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# sam verify disk0: MD5
Total file count in disk0: = 813
082183cb6e65a44fd7ca95fe8e93def6
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# sam verify disk0: MD5 082183cb6e65a44fd7ca95fe8e93def6
Total file count in disk0: = 813
Same digest values
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# sam verify disk0: MD5 3216c9282d97ee7a40b78a4e401158bd
Total file count in disk0: = 813
Different digest values
```

The following example shows how to use MD5 to generate a message digest and then uses that message digest as input to perform the digest comparison:

```plaintext
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# sam verify disk0: /crl_revoked.bin MD5
38243ffbbe6c6db7a12fa9fa6452956ac
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# sam verify disk0: /crl_revoked.bin MD5 38243ffbbe6c6db7a12fa9fa6452956ac
Same digest values
```
show sam certificate

To display records in the certificate table, use the show sam certificate command.

Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>detail</td>
<td>Displays all the attributes for the selected table entry (specified by the certificate-index argument).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>Specifies the certificates stored in a specific location. Use one of the following: root, mem, disk0, disk1, or other flash device on router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certificate-index</td>
<td>Index number for the entry, in the range from 1 to 65000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brief</td>
<td>Displays selected attributes for entries in the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>Displays selected attributes for all the entries in the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>Displays selected attributes for only the certificates stored in a specific location. Use one of the following: root, mem, disk0, disk1, or other flash device on router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Command Default

None

Command Modes

EXEC

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>The summary keyword was replaced with the brief keyword.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines

Use the show sam certificate command when you want to display all the certificates stored in the system. Attributes are certificate number, certificate flag, serial number, subject name, issued by, version, issuing algorithm, not-before and not-after dates, public key, and signature.

To get the certificate number, use the certificate-index argument. When used with the brief keyword, the all keyword displays selected attributes for all the entries in the table.

When used with the brief keyword, the location argument displays selected attributes for only the certificates stored in a specific location. Use one of the following: root, mem, disk0, disk1, or other flash device on router.
Examples

In the example, the root location has one certificate, and disk0 has one certificate. The following sample output is from the show sam certificate command:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show sam certificate

    summary
    all

--------------- SUMMARY OF CERTIFICATES -------------------
Certificate Location :root
Certificate Index :1
Certificate Flag :VALIDATED
Subject Name :
    cn=Code Signing Server Certificate Authority,o=Cisco,c=US
Issued By :
    cn=Code Signing Server Certificate Authority,o=Cisco,c=US
CRL Distribution Point
    file://\CodeSignServer\CertEnroll\Code%20Signing\20Server\20Certificate
    %20Authority.crl
Certificate Location :mem
Certificate Index :1
Certificate Flag :VALIDATED
Serial Number :01:27:FE:79:00:00:00:00:00:05
Subject Name :
    cn=Engineer code sign certificate
Issued By :
    cn=Code Signing Server Certificate Authority,o=Cisco,c=US
CRL Distribution Point
    file://\CodeSignServer\CertEnroll\Code%20Signing\20Server\20Certificate %20Authority.crl

This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.

Table 12: show sam certificate summary all Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Location</td>
<td>Location of the certificate; one of the following: root, mem, disk0, or disk1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Index</td>
<td>Index number that the Software Authentication Manager automatically assigns to the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Flag</td>
<td>One of the following: TRUSTED, VALIDATED, EXPIRED, or REVOKED.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following sample output from the `show sam certificate` command shows how to display particular SAM details:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show sam certificate detail mem 1

Certificate Location :mem
Certificate Index :1
Certificate Flag :VALIDATED
---------------------- CERTIFICATE ----------------------
Serial Number :01:27:FE:79:00:00:00:00:05
Subject Name :
cn=Engineer code sign certificate
Issued By :
cn=Code Signing Server Certificate Authority,o=Cisco,c=US
CRL Distribution Point
file://\CodeSignServer\CertEnroll\Code%20Signing%20Server%20Certificate%20Authority.crl
Version 3 certificate
Issuing Algorithm:MD5withRSA
Public Key BER (294 bytes):
30 82 01 22 30 0d 06 09 2a 86 48 86 f7 0d 01 01 [0.."0...*.H......]
01 05 00 03 82 01 0f 00 30 82 01 0a 02 82 01 01 [........0....]
00 be 75 eb 9b b3 d9 c0 d8 c6 db 68 f3 5a ab ...
0c 17 d3 84 16 22 d8 18 dc 3b 13 99 23 d8 c6 94 [......"..#
91 15 15 ec 57 ea 68 dc 22 ed 90 5a 5d 88 7c 5a ...
99 ef bd b2 e9 96 5b 5b 5f 05 2a 2b 29 7e 7e 7e ...
a9 47 cd 22 aa ce 70 0e 4c 9b 48 a1 cf 0f 4a db ...
35 f5 1f 20 b7 68 cb 71 2c 27 01 84 d6 bf 4e d1 [5.. h.q,'....]
ba e1 b2 50 e7 f1 29 3a b4 85 3e ac d7 cb 3f 36 [..F]...];>..76
96 65 30 13 27 48 84 f5 fe 88 03 4a d7 05 ed 72 [...]u.H.......
4b aa a5 62 e6 05 ac 3d 20 4b d6 c9 db 92 89 38 [K...B...= K...8]
b5 14 df 46 a3 8f 6b 05 c3 54 4d a2 83 d4 b7 02 [...]F...K...TM....
88 2d 58 e7 a4 86 1c 48 77 68 49 66 a1 35 3e c4 [...]X...Hwhf.5>.
71 20 aa 18 9d 9f 1a 38 52 3c e3 35 b2 19 12 ad [q ...8R<.5....
99 ad ce 6b 8b b0 06 20 2b ba 25 f1 e0 5d aa 12 [...h...d...]
9c 44 89 63 89 62 e3 cb f3 5d 5f a3 7c b7 b9 ef [....c.B...|...]
01 89 5b 33 35 a8 81 60 38 61 4e d8 4f 6a 53 70 [...]35...8AnOjSp]
35 02 03 01 00 01 [5].....
Certificate signature (256 bytes):
67 f6 12 25 3f d4 d2 dd 6a f7 3e 55 b8 9f 33 53 [g...%...j.U...S3]
20 4d d1 17 54 08 8a 70 22 35 92 59 9c 03 9c 0f [M.T.g"5.Y....]
ce 46 3c 06 74 d0 a9 8e b1 88 a2 35 b3 eb 1b 00 [..FX.t....5....]
5c 6d bd 3d d5 ad 17 19 f2 c6 96 87 9b e7 15 01 [\mummmme]
b2 04 af 7d 92 60 d9 ee ef bc 60 4e 2e af 84 e2 [..................N....]
42 fe 07 71 7e fc ee ee f5 d1 d6 71 e7 46 f0 97 [B...q........mQ.P..]
e0 e8 b3 0e f9 07 e0 de 6e 36 5a 56 1e 80 10 05 [...]nEZV....
59 d9 80 80 b7 f7 a3 d1 f6 cd 00 12 9f 90 f0 65 83 [Y.........e]
e9 0f 76 a4 da eb 1b 1b 2d ea bd be a0 8a fb a7 [V...----]
a5 18 ff 9f 5c e9 99 66 f0 d3 90 ae 49 3f c8 cc [...].v...I7..
32 6b db 64 da fd f5 4a 4a bc f3 b0 9a 2f 17 d8 [2k.d...B.....]
```
This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Descriptions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Location</td>
<td>Location of the certificate; one of the following: root, mem, disk0, or disk1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Index</td>
<td>Index number that the SAM automatically assigns to the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Flag</td>
<td>One of the following: TRUSTED, VALIDATED, EXPIRED, or REVOKED.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial Number</td>
<td>Unique serial number of the certificate, assigned by its issuer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject Name</td>
<td>Name of the entity for which the certificate is issued.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issued By</td>
<td>Name of the entity that issued the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>The X.509 version of the certificate. The version can be 1 (X.509v1), 2 (X.509v2), or 3 (X.509v3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuing Algorithm</td>
<td>Hash and public key algorithm that the issuer uses to sign the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Key</td>
<td>Subject public key for the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate signature</td>
<td>Encrypted hash value (or signature) of the certificate. The hash value of the certificate is encrypted using the private key of the issuer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**show sam crl**

To display the records in the certificate revocation list (CRL) table, use the **show sam crl** command.

`show sam crl {summary| detail crl-index}`

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>summary</td>
<td>Displays selected attributes for all entries in the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detail</td>
<td>Displays all the attributes for the selected table entry (specified by the <code>crl-index</code> argument).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>crl-index</code></td>
<td>Index number for the entry, in the range from 1 to 65000.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the **show sam crl** command when you want to display all the revoked certificates currently stored on the system. Attributes are CRL index number, issuer, and update information.

To get the CRL index number, use the **summary** keyword.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following sample output is from the **show sam crl** command for the **summary** keyword:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show sam crl summary
----------------------- SUMMARY OF CRLs --------------------------
CRL Index :1
Issuer:CN = Code Sign Server Certificate Manager, OU = Cisco HFR mc , O = Cisco,
        L = San Jose, ST = CA, C = US, EA =<16> iosmx-css-cert@cisco.com
```
Including updates of: Sep 09, 2002 03:50:41 GMT
This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.

Table 14: show sam crl summary Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CRL Index</td>
<td>Index number for the entry, in the range from 1 to 65000. The index is kept in the certificate revocation list table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuer</td>
<td>Certificate authority (CA) that issued this CRL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Including updates of</td>
<td>Versions of CRLs from this CA that are included in the CRL table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sample output is from the `show sam crl` command for the `detail` keyword:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show sam crl detail 1
------------------------------------------------------------
CRL Index :1
-------------- CERTIFICATE REVOCATION LIST (CRL) ------------
Issuer:CN = Code Sign Server Certificate Manager, OU = Cisco HFR mc , O = Cisco, L = San Jose, ST = CA, C = US, EA =<16> iosmx-css-cert@cisco.com
Including updates of: Sep 09, 2002 03:50:41 GMT
Revoked certificates include:
  Serial #:61:2C:5C:83:00:00:00:00:00:44, revoked on Nov 03, 2002 00:59:02 GMT
  Serial #:21:2C:48:83:00:00:00:00:00:59, revoked on Nov 06, 2002 19:32:51 GMT
------------------------------------------------------------
```

This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.

Table 15: show sam crl detail Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Descriptions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CRL Index</td>
<td>Index number for the entry, in the range from 1 to 65000. The index is kept in the certificate revocation list table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuer</td>
<td>CA that issued this CRL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Including updates of</td>
<td>Versions of CRLs from this CA that are included in the CRL table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revoked certificates include</td>
<td>List of certificates that have been revoked, including the certificate serial number and the date and time the certificate was revoked.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show sam log

To display the contents of the Software Authentication Manager (SAM) log file, use the `show sam log` command.

`show sam log [lines-number]`

**Syntax Description**

`lines-number` (Optional) Number of lines of the SAM log file to display, in the range from 0 to 200, where 0 displays all lines in the log file and 200 displays the most recent 200 lines (or as many lines as there are in the log file if there are fewer than 200 lines).

**Command Default**

The `show sam log` command without a `lines-number` argument displays all the lines in the log file.

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

The SAM log file records changes to the SAM tables, including any expired or revoked certificates, table digest mismatches, and SAM server restarts.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following sample output is from the `show sam log` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show sam log
06/16/02 12:03:44 UTC Added certificate in table root/1 CN = Certificate Manage, 0x01
06/16/02 12:03:45 UTC SAM server restarted through router reboot
06/16/02 12:03:47 UTC Added CRL in table CN = Certificate Manage, updated at Nov 10, 2001 04:11:42 GMT
06/16/02 12:03:48 UTC Added certificate in table mem:/1 CN = Certificate Manage, 0x1e
06/16/02 12:16:16 UTC SAM server restarted through router reboot
06/16/02 12:25:02 UTC SAM server restarted through router reboot
06/16/02 12:25:04 UTC Added certificate in table mem:/1 CN = Certificate Manage, 0x1e
06/16/02 12:39:30 UTC SAM server restarted through router reboot
06/16/02 12:39:30 UTC SAM server restarted through router reboot
06/16/02 12:40:57 UTC Added certificate in table mem:/1 CN = Certificate Manage, 0x1e
```
33 entries shown
Each line of output shows a particular logged event such as a table change, expired or revoked certificates, table digest mismatches, or SAM server restarts.
show sam package

To display information about the certificate used to authenticate the software for a particular package installed on the networking device, use the `show sam package` command.

```
show sam package package-name
```

**Syntax Description**

```
package-name    Location of the software package, including the memory device (disk0: disk1: mem:, and so on) and the file system path to the file. Use the `show install all` command to display the Install Manager package name and location information.
```

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `show install all` command to display the installed location and name of the software package—for example, mem:ena-base-0.0.0 or disk1:crypto-exp-lib-0.4.0—and then use the `show sam package` command to display information about the certificate used to authenticate that installed package. The `show sam package` command displays the same information as the `show sam certificate` command for the `detail` keyword.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following sample output is from the `show sam package` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show sam package mem:12k-rp-1.0.0
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
Certificate Location :mem
Certificate Index :1
Certificate Flag :VALIDATED

----------------------- CERTIFICATE ------------------------
Serial Number :01:27:FE:79:00:00:00:00:00:05
Subject Name :
```
cn=Engineer code sign certificate
Issued By :
   cn=Code Signing Server Certificate Authority,o=Cisco,c=US
CRL Distribution Point
file://\CodeSignServer\CertEnroll\Code%20Signing%20Server\20Certificate%20Authority.crl
Version 3 certificate
Issuing Algorithm:MD5withRSA
Public Key BER (294 bytes):
30 82 01 22 30 0d 06 09 2a 86 48 86 f7 0d 01 01 [0.."O...",H.....]
   01 05 00 03 82 01 0f 00 30 82 01 0a 02 82 01 01 [........0.....]
   00 be 75 eb b3 d9 cb 2e d8 c6 db 68 f3 5a ab [..u.......h.Z.]
   0c 17 d3 84 16 22 d8 18 dc 3b 13 99 23 d8 c6 94 [.....;...
   91 15 15 ec 57 ea 68 dc a5 38 68 6a cb 0f 4b c2 [W..h..3h].K..
   43 4b 2d f9 92 94 93 04 df ff ca 0b 35 1d 85 12 [ CK.........5...]
   99 e9 bd bc e2 98 99 58 fe 6b 45 38 f0 52 b4 cb [X.kE8.R...]
   a9 47 cd 22 aa ce 70 0e 4c 9b 48 a1 cf 0f 4a db [G.]:..p.L.H...J..
   35 f5 1f 20 b7 68 cb 71 2c 27 01 84 d6 2b 4f d1 [5.._.h.q,'....N.
   ba e1 b2 50 e7 f1 29 3a b4 85 3e ac d7 cb 3f 36 [..F...];...76]
   96 65 30 13 27 48 84 f5 fe 88 03 4a 07 05 ed 72 [e0.".....J.r]
   4b aa a5 62 e6 05 ac 3d 20 4b df c9 0b 92 89 38 [K..b..- K.....]
   b5 14 df 46 a3 8f 6b 05 c3 54 4d a2 83 d4 b7 02 [F..K..TM....]
   88 2d 58 e7 a4 a6 48 48 77 68 49 66 a1 35 3e c4 [-X.....WHiF.5..]
   71 20 a2 18 9d 9f 1a 38 52 3c e3 35 32 19 12 ad [q .......8R<..5...]
   99 ad 68 8b b0 d0 29 ba 25 fd 1e 05 5a 12 [h...].%...]
   9c 44 89 63 89 62 e3 cb f3 5d 5f a3 7c b7 9f ef [.B.c.b...[...]
   01 89 5b 33 35 a8 81 6b 38 61 4e 38 6f 6a 53 70 [..35..8aN.O]Sp]
   35 02 03 01 00 01 [5.....]
Certificate signature (256 bytes):
   67 r6 12 25 3f d4 d2 dd 6a f7 3e 55 b8 9f 33 53 [g..%?...].U..3S]
   20 4d d1 17 54 08 8a 70 22 35 92 59 9c 03 9c 0f [ M..T..p*S.Y....]
   ce 46 3c 06 74 d0 a9 8e b1 88 a2 35 b3 eb 1b 00 [.F.<t....5.....]
   5c 6d bb 1d b5 ad 17 19 f2 c6 96 87 9b e7 15 01 [\m............]
   42 fe 07 71 7e fc ee ee ee ee ee f5 d1 6d 71 e7 4e f0 97 [B.q.....mq.F.]
   e0 b8 b3 0e f9 07 e0 de 6e 36 5a 56 1e 80 10 05 [.n62V....]
   59 d9 88 ba f7 a3 d1 f6 cd 00 12 9f 90 f0 65 83 [Y............e.
   e0 0f 76 7e 76 4f 99 69 cb d3 90 ae 49 3f 5c cc [a...].%...]
   a5 18 ff 9f 5c e9 99 f0 d3 90 ae 49 3f 5c cc [a...].%...]
   32 6b db 64 da fd a5 42 ea bc f3 b0 8a 2f 17 d8 [2k..3..B...../]
   cf c0 d8 d4 3a 41 ea 1e df 7a c6 a6 a1 65 2c 94 [.A..z..e..]
   8a ba ea da da 3e 8a 44 9b 47 e7 35 10 ab 61 1b 4f [.>.D.G5.s.a.D]
   82 d4 59 16 d5 f2 2d f3 c2 08 cc 1c 7f ab be 9c [Y............e.
   be 52 73 ea e0 89 d7 6f 4d d0 d8 aa 3d 50 d6 b0 [.Rs..0M..=P..]

This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Location</td>
<td>Location of the certificate; one of the following: root, mem, disk0, or disk1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Index</td>
<td>Index number that the Software Authentication Manager (SAM) automatically assigns to the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Flag</td>
<td>One of the following: TRUSTED, VALIDATED, EXPIRED, or REVOKED.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial Number</td>
<td>Unique serial number of the certificate, assigned by its issuer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Field Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Subject Name</td>
<td>Name of the entity for which the certificate is issued.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issued By</td>
<td>Name of the entity that issued the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>X.509 version of the certificate. The version can be 1 (X.509v1), 2 (X.509v2), or 3 (X.509v3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuing Algorithm</td>
<td>Hash and public key algorithm that the issuer uses to sign the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Key</td>
<td>Subject public key for the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate signature</td>
<td>Encrypted hash value (or signature) of the certificate. The hash value of the certificate is encrypted using the private key of the issuer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show install</td>
<td>Displays the installed location and name of the software package. You can use the all keyword to display the active packages from all locations. For more information, see Cisco IOS XR System Management Command Reference for the Cisco CRS Router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show sam certificate, on page 248</td>
<td>Displays records in the SAM certificate table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**show sam sysinfo**

To display current configuration settings for the Software Authentication Manager (SAM), use the `show sam sysinfo` command.

```
show sam sysinfo
```

**Syntax Description**

This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `show sam sysinfo` command to determine the configuration settings of the SAM.

The display shows the status of the SAM, current prompt interval setting, and current prompt default response.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following sample output is from the `show sam sysinfo` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show sam sysinfo
Software Authentication Manager System Information
-----------------------------------------------
Status : running
Prompt Interval : 10 sec
Prompt Default Response : NO
This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.
```
Table 17: show sam sysinfo Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>One of the following: running or not running. If the SAM is not running, the System Manager should detect that state and attempt to restart the SAM. If problems prevent the System Manager from restarting the SAM after a predefined number of repeated attempts, the SAM will not be restarted. In such a case, you should contact Cisco Technical Assistance Center (TAC) personnel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prompt Interval</td>
<td>Current setting for the prompt interval. The interval can be set in the range from 0 to 300 seconds. The value shown in the sample output (10 seconds) is the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prompt Default Response</td>
<td>Current setting that specifies the action taken by the SAM if the prompt interval expires before the user responds to the prompt. If the user does not respond to the prompt, the SAM waits for the specified interval to expire and then takes the action specified in the sam prompt-interval command (either proceed keyword or terminate keyword). Entering the sam promptinterval command with the proceed keyword causes the show sam sysinfo command to display “Yes,” meaning that the default action taken by the SAM is to wait for the prompt interval to expire and then respond as if it had received a “yes” from the user. Entering the sam promptinterval command with the terminate keyword causes the show sam sysinfo command to display “No,” meaning that the default action taken by the SAM is to wait for the prompt interval to expire and then respond as if it had received a “no” from the user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sam prompt-interval, on page 244</td>
<td>Sets the interval that the SAM waits after prompting the user for input when it detects an abnormal condition and determines how the SAM responds when it does not receive user input within the specified interval.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Secure Shell Commands

This module describes the Cisco IOS XR software commands used to configure Secure Shell (SSH).

For detailed information about SSH concepts, configuration tasks, and examples, see the Implementing Secure Shell on the Cisco IOS XR Software module in the Cisco IOS XR System Security Configuration Guide for the Cisco CRS Router.

- clear ssh, page 262
- sftp, page 264
- sftp (Interactive Mode), page 268
- show ssh, page 271
- show ssh session details, page 273
- ssh, page 275
- ssh client knownhost, page 278
- ssh client source-interface, page 280
- ssh client vrf, page 282
- ssh server, page 284
- ssh server rekey-time, page 286
- ssh server rekey-volume, page 287
- show ssh rekey, page 288
- ssh server logging, page 290
- ssh server rate-limit, page 292
- ssh server session-limit, page 293
- ssh server v2, page 295
- ssh server netconf port, page 296
- ssh timeout, page 298
clear ssh

To terminate an incoming or outgoing Secure Shell (SSH) connection, use the clear ssh command.

```
clear ssh {session-id | outgoing session-id}
```

### Syntax Description

- **session-id**: Session ID number of an incoming connection as displayed in the `show ssh` command output. Range is from 0 to 1024.
- **outgoing session-id**: Specifies the session ID number of an outgoing connection as displayed in the `show ssh` command output. Range is from 1 to 10.

### Command Default

None

### Command Modes

EXEC

### Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Usage Guidelines

Use the clear ssh command to disconnect incoming or outgoing SSH connections. Incoming connections are managed by the SSH server running on the local networking device. Outgoing connections are initiated from the local networking device.

To display the session ID for a connection, use the show ssh command.

### Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

In the following example, the show ssh command is used to display all incoming and outgoing connections to the router. The clear ssh command is then used to terminate the incoming session with the ID number 0.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ssh
SSH version: Cisco-2.0
session pty location state userid host ver
-----------------------------------------------
Incoming sessions
0 vty0 0/33/1 SESSION_OPEN cisco 172.19.72.182 v2
```
Secure Shell Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show ssh, on page 271</td>
<td>Displays the incoming and outgoing connections to the router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To start the secure FTP (SFTP) client, use the `sftp` command.

`sftp [username @ host : remote-filename] source-filename dest-filename [source-interface type interface-path-id] [vrf vrf-name]`

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>username</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Name of the user performing the file transfer. The at symbol (@) following the username is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>hostname:remote-filename</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Name of the Secure Shell File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) server. The colon (:) following the hostname is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>source-filename</code></td>
<td>SFTP source, including the path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>dest-filename</code></td>
<td>SFTP destination, including the path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>source-interface</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the source IP address of a selected interface for all outgoing SSH connections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>type</code></td>
<td>Interface type. For more information, use the question mark (?) online help function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface-path-id</code></td>
<td>Physical interface or virtual interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>vrf vrf-name</code></td>
<td>Specifies the name of the VRF associated with the source interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**
If no `username` argument is provided, the login name on the router is used. If no `hostname` argument is provided, the file is considered local.

**Command Modes**
EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.8.0</td>
<td>The <code>srcfile</code> keyword was removed and was replaced by an argument for this same purpose. Support was added for the <code>vrf</code> and the <code>source-interface</code> keywords.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Usage Guidelines

SFTP provides for the secure (and authenticated) copying of files between a router and a remote host. Like the `copy` command, the `sftp` command can be invoked only in EXEC mode.

If a username is not provided, the login name on the router is used as the default. If a host name is not provided, the file is considered local.

If the source interface is specified in the `sftp` command, the `sftp` interface takes precedence over the interface specified in the `ssh client source-interface` command.

When the file destination is a local path, all of the source files should be on remote hosts, and vice versa.

When multiple source files exist, the destination should be a preexisting directory. Otherwise, the destination can be either a directory name or destination filename. The file source cannot be a directory name.

If you download files from different remote hosts, that is, the source points to different remote hosts, the SFTP client spawns SSH instances for each host, which may result in multiple prompts for user authentication.

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basic-services</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

In the following example, user `abc` is downloading the file `ssh.diff` from the SFTP server `ena-view1` to `disk0`:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#sftp abc@ena-view1:ssh.diff disk0
```

In the following example, user `abc` is uploading multiple files from `disk0:/sam_*` to `/users/abc/` on a remote SFTP server called `ena-view1`:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# sftp disk0:/sam_* abc@ena-view1:/users/abc/
```

In the following example, user `admin` is downloading the file `run` from `disk0a:` to `disk0:/v6copy` on a local SFTP server using an IPv6 address:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#sftp admin@[2::2]:disk0a:/run disk0:/V6copy
```

Connecting to 2::2:
Password:

disk0a:/run
Transferred 308413 Bytes
308413 bytes copied in 0 sec (338172)bytes/sec

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#dir disk0:/V6copy
```

Directory of disk0:

```
70144 -rwx 308413 Sun Oct 16 23:06:52 2011 V6copy
2102657024 bytes total (1537638400 bytes free)
```
In the following example, user *admin* is uploading the file *v6copy* from *disk0:* to *disk0a:/v6back* on a local SFTP server using an IPv6 address:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#sftp disk0:/V6copy admin@[2:2:2::2]:disk0a:/v6back
Connecting to 2:2:2::2...
Password:
/disk0:/V6copy
   Transferred 308413 Bytes
   308413 bytes copied in 0 sec (421329)bytes/sec
```
```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#dir disk0a:/v6back
Directory of disk0a:
   66016 -rwx 308413 Sun Oct 16 23:07:28 2011 v6back
```

In the following example, user *admin* is downloading the file *sampfile* from *disk0:* to *disk0a:/sampfile_v4* on a local SFTP server using an IPv4 address:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#sftp admin@2.2.2.2:disk0:/sampfile disk0a:/sampfile_v4
Connecting to 2.2.2.2...
Password:
disk0:/sampfile
   Transferred 986 Bytes
   986 bytes copied in 0 sec (493000)bytes/sec
```
```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#dir disk0a:/sampfile_v4
Directory of disk0a:
   131520 -rwx 986 Tue Oct 18 05:37:00 2011 sampfile_v4
```

In the following example, user *admin* is uploading the file *sampfile_v4* from *disk0a:* to *disk0:/sampfile_back* on a local SFTP server using an IPv4 address:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#sftp disk0a:/sampfile_v4 admin@2.2.2.2:disk0:/sampfile_back
Connecting to 2.2.2.2...
Password:
disk0a:/sampfile_v4
   Transferred 986 Bytes
   986 bytes copied in 0 sec (564000)bytes/sec
```
```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#dir disk0:/sampfile_back
Directory of disk0:
   121765 -rwx 986 Tue Oct 18 05:39:00 2011 sampfile_back
```

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ssh client source-interface, on page 280</td>
<td>Specifies the source IP address of a selected interface for all outgoing SSH connections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssh client vrf, on page 282</td>
<td>Configures a new VRF for use by the SSH client.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**sftp (Interactive Mode)**

To enable users to start the secure FTP (SFTP) client, use the `sftp` command.

```
sftp [username @ host : remote-filenam e] [source-interface type interface-path-id] [vrf vrf-name]
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>username</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Name of the user performing the file transfer. The at symbol (@) following the username is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>hostname:remote-filenam e</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Name of the Secure Shell File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) server. The colon (:) following the hostname is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>source-interface</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the source IP address of a selected interface for all outgoing SSH connections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>type</code></td>
<td>Interface type. For more information, use the question mark (?) online help function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface-path-id</code></td>
<td>Physical interface or virtual interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>vrf vrf-name</code></td>
<td>Specifies the name of the VRF associated with the source interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

If no `username` argument is provided, the login name on the router is used. If no `hostname` argument is provided, the file is considered local.

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.9.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

The SFTP client, in the interactive mode, creates a secure SSH channel where the user can enter any supported command. When a user starts the SFTP client in an interactive mode, the SFTP client process creates a secure SSH channel and opens an editor where user can enter any supported command.

More than one request can be sent to the SFTP server to execute the commands. While there is no limit on the number of 'non-acknowledged' or outstanding requests to the server, the server might buffer or queue these requests for convenience. Therefore, there might be a logical sequence to the order of requests.
The following unix based commands are supported in the interactive mode:

- bye
- `cd <path>`
- `chmod <mode> <path>`
- exit
- `get <remote-path> [local-path]`
- help
- `ls [-alt] [path]`
- `mkdir <path>`
- `put <local-path> [remote-path]`
- pwd
- quit
- `rename <old-path> <new-path>`
- `rmdir <path>`
- `rm <path>`

The following commands are not supported:

- lcd, lls, lpwd, lmask, lmkdir
- ln, symlink
- chgrp, chown
- !, !command
- ?
- mget, mput

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td></td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basic-services</td>
<td></td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

In the following example, user `admin` is downloading and uploading a file from/to an external SFTP server using an IPv6 address:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#sftp admin@[2:2:2::2]
Connecting to 2:2:2::2...
Password: ...
```
sftp> pwd
Remote working directory: /
sftp> cd /auto/tftp-server1-users5/admin
sftp> get frmRouter /disk0:/frmRouterdownoad
/auto/tftp-server1-users5/admin/frmRouter
   Transferred 1578 Bytes
   1578 bytes copied in 0 sec (27684)bytes/sec
sftp> put /disk0:/frmRouterdownoad againtoServer
/disk0:/frmRouterdownoad
   Transferred 1578 Bytes
   1578 bytes copied in 0 sec (14747)bytes/sec
sftp>

In the following example, user abc is downloading and uploading a file from/to an external SFTP server using an IPv4 address:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#sftp abc@2.2.2.2
Connecting to 2.2.2.2...
Password:
sftp> pwd
Remote working directory: /
sftp> cd /auto/tftp-server1-users5/abc
sftp> get frmRouter /disk0:/frmRouterdownoad
/auto/tftp-server1-users5/abc/frmRouter
   Transferred 1578 Bytes
   1578 bytes copied in 0 sec (27684)bytes/sec
sftp> put /disk0:/frmRouterdownoad againtoServer
/disk0:/frmRouterdownoad
   Transferred 1578 Bytes
   1578 bytes copied in 0 sec (14747)bytes/sec
sftp>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Related Commands</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ssh client source-interface, on page 280</td>
<td>Specifies the source IP address of a selected interface for all outgoing SSH connections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ssh client vrf, on page 282</td>
<td>Configures a new VRF for use by the SSH client.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show ssh

To display all incoming and outgoing connections to the router, use the `show ssh` command.

```
show ssh
```

**Syntax Description**
This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**
None

**Command Modes**
EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
Use the `show ssh` command to display all incoming and outgoing Secure Shell (SSH) Version 1 (SSHv1) and SSH Version 2 (SSHv2) connections.

**Examples**
This is sample output from the `show ssh` command when SSH is enabled:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ssh
SSH version : Cisco-2.0
id pty location state userid host ver authentication
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Incoming sessions
Outgoing sessions
1 0/3/CPU0 SESSION_OPEN lab 12.22.57. v2 password
2 0/3/CPU0 SESSION_OPEN lab 12.22.57.75 v2 keyboard-interactive
```

This table describes significant fields shown in the display.
### Table 18: show ssh Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>session</td>
<td>Session identifier for the incoming and outgoing SSH connections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pty</td>
<td>pty-id allocated for the incoming session. Null for outgoing SSH connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>Specifies the location of the SSH server for an incoming connection. For an outgoing connection, location specifies from which route processor the SSH session is initiated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>state</td>
<td>The SSH state that the connection is currently in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userid</td>
<td>Authentication, authorization and accounting (AAA) username used to connect to or from the router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>IP address of the remote peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ver</td>
<td>Specifies if the connection type is SSHv1 or SSHv2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication</td>
<td>Specifies the type of authentication method chosen by the user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show sessions</td>
<td>Displays information about open Telnet or rlogin connections. For more information, see the Cisco IOS XR System Management Command Reference for the Cisco CRS Router</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ssh session details, on page 273</td>
<td>Displays the details for all the incoming and outgoing SSHv2 connections, to the router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show ssh session details

To display the details for all incoming and outgoing Secure Shell Version 2 (SSHv2) connections, use the `show ssh session details` command.

```
show ssh session details
```

**Syntax Description**
This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**
None

**Command Modes**
EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**
Use the `show ssh session details` command to display a detailed report of the SSHv2 connections to or from the router, including the cipher chosen for the specific session.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following is sample output from the `show ssh session details` command to display the details for all the incoming and outgoing SSHv2 connections:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ssh session details
id  key-exchange   pubkey  incipher  outcipher  inmac  outmac
---------------------------------------------------------------
Incoming Session
0  diffie-hellman-group14  ssh-rsa  aes128-ctr  aes128-ctr  hmac-sha1  hmac-sha1
1  ecdh-sha2-nistp521  ssh-rsa  aes256-ctr  aes256-ctr  hmac-sha2-512  hmac-sha2-512
```

This table describes the significant fields shown in the display.
### Table 19: show ssh session details Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>session</td>
<td>Session identifier for the incoming and outgoing SSH connections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key-exchange</td>
<td>Key exchange algorithm chosen by both peers to authenticate each other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pubkey</td>
<td>Public key algorithm chosen for key exchange.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incipher</td>
<td>Encryption cipher chosen for the Rx traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outcipher</td>
<td>Encryption cipher chosen for the Tx traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inmac</td>
<td>Authentication (message digest) algorithm chosen for the Rx traffic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outmac</td>
<td>Authentication (message digest) algorithm chosen for the Tx traffic.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show sessions</td>
<td>Displays information about open Telnet or rlogin connections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show ssh, on page 271</td>
<td>Displays all the incoming and outgoing connections to the router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To start the Secure Shell (SSH) client connection and enable an outbound connection to an SSH server, use the `ssh` command.

```bash
ssh [vrf vrf-name] [ipv4-address|ipv6-address|hostname] [username user-id] [cipher aes {128-ctr|192-ctr|256-ctr}] [source-interface type interface-path-id] [command command-name]
```

### Syntax Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>vrf vrf-name</code></td>
<td>Specifies the name of the VRF associated with this connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ipv4-address</code></td>
<td>IPv4 address in A:B:C:D format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ipv6-address</code></td>
<td>IPv6 address in X:X::X format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>hostname</code></td>
<td>Hostname of the remote node. If the hostname has both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses, the IPv6 address is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>username user-id</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the username to use when logging in on the remote networking device running the SSH server. If no user ID is specified, the default is the current user ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cipher aes</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) as the cipher for the SSH client connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>128-CTR</code></td>
<td>128-bit keys in CTR mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>192-CTR</code></td>
<td>192-bit keys in CTR mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>256-CTR</code></td>
<td>256-bit keys in CTR mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>source interface</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies the source IP address of a selected interface for all outgoing SSH connections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>type</code></td>
<td>Interface type. For more information, use the question mark ( ? ) online help function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface-path-id</code></td>
<td>Physical interface or virtual interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>command</code></td>
<td>(Optional) Specifies a remote command. Adding this keyword prompts the SSHv2 server to parse and execute the <code>ssh</code> command in non-interactive mode instead of initiating the interactive session.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes

- If there is no specification of a particular cipher by the administrator, the client proposes 3DES as the default to ensure compatibility.
- Use the `show interfaces` command in EXEC mode to see a list of all interfaces currently configured on the router.
- For more information about the syntax for the router, use the question mark ( ? ) online help function.
**Command Default**

3DES cipher
None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.8.0</td>
<td>Support was added for the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Association of a specific VRF for the client connection was added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) cipher with three bit lengths.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.9.1</td>
<td>Support for the <strong>command</strong> keyword was added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the **ssh** command to make an outbound client connection. The SSH client tries to make an SSHv2 connection to the remote peer. If the remote peer supports only the SSHv1 server, it internally spawns an SSHv1 connection to the remote server. The process of the remote peer version detection and spawning the appropriate client connection is transparent to the user.

If a VRF is specified in the **ssh** command, the **ssh** interface takes precedence over the interface specified in the **ssh client source-interface** command.

When you configure the **cipher aes** keyword, an SSH client makes a proposal, including one or more of the key sizes you specified, as part of its request to the SSH server. The SSH server chooses the best possible cipher, based both on which ciphers that server supports and on the client proposal.

**Note**

AES encryption algorithm is not supported on the SSHv1 server and client. Any requests for an AES cipher sent by an SSHv2 client to an SSHv1 server are ignored, with the server using 3DES instead.

A VRF is required to run SSH, although this may be either the default VRF or a VRF specified by the user. If no VRF is specified while configuring the **ssh client source-interface**, the default VRF is assumed.

Use the **command** keyword to enable the SSHv2 server to parse and execute the **ssh** command in non-interactive mode instead of initiating an interactive session.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basic-services</td>
<td>execute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The following sample output is from the `ssh` command to enable an outbound SSH client connection:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# ssh vrf green username userabc
Password:
Remote-host>
```

Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>show ssh</code>, on page 271</td>
<td>Displays all the incoming and outgoing connections to the router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ssh client knownhost**

To authenticate a server public key (pubkey), use the **ssh client knownhost** command. To disable authentication of a server pubkey, use the **no** form of this command.

**ssh client knownhost device:/filename**

**no ssh client knownhost device:/filename**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax Description</th>
<th>device:/filename</th>
<th>Complete path of the filename (for example, slot0:/server_pubkey). The colon (:) and slash (/) are required.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Default</th>
<th>None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Modes</th>
<th>Global configuration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command History</th>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Usage Guidelines    | The **server pubkey** is a cryptographic system that uses two keys at the client end—a public key known to everyone and a private, or secret, key known only to the owner of the keys. In the absence of certificates, the server pubkey is transported to the client through an out-of-band secure channel. The client stores this pubkey in its local database and compares this key against the key supplied by the server during the early stage of key negotiation for a session-building handshake. If the key is not matched or no key is found in the local database of the client, users are prompted to either accept or reject the session. The operative assumption is that the first time the server pubkey is retrieved through an out-of-band secure channel, it is stored in the local database. This process is identical to the current model adapted by Secure Shell (SSH) implementations in the UNIX environment. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>crypto</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operations</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>The following sample output is from the <strong>ssh client knownhost</strong> command:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh client knownhost disk0:/ssh.knownhost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# commit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# **ssh hostl username user1234**
Host key not found from the list of known hosts.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? **yes**
Password:
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:hostl# **exit**
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# **ssh hostl username user1234**
ssh client source-interface

To specify the source IP address of a selected interface for all outgoing Secure Shell (SSH) connections, use the `ssh client source-interface` command. To disable use of the specified interface IP address, use the `no` form of this command.

```
ssh client source-interface type interface-path-id
no ssh client source-interface type interface-path-id
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>type</code></td>
<td>Interface type. For more information, use the question mark (?) online help function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>interface-path-id</code></td>
<td>Physical interface or virtual interface.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

- Use the `show interfaces` command to see a list of all interfaces currently configured on the router.
- For more information about the syntax for the router, use the question mark (?) online help function.

**Command Default**

No source interface is used.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration mode

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `ssh client source-interface` command to set the IP address of the specified interface for all outgoing SSH connections. If this command is not configured, TCP chooses the source IP address when the socket is connected, based on the outgoing interface used—which in turn is based on the route required to reach the server. This command applies to outbound shell over SSH as well as Secure Shell File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) sessions, which use the ssh client as a transport.

The source-interface configuration affects connections only to the remote host in the same address family. The system database (Sysdb) verifies that the interface specified in the command has a corresponding IP address (in the same family) configured.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples

The following example shows how to set the IP address of the Management Ethernet interface for all outgoing SSH connections:

```plaintext
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh client source-interface MgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0
```
**ssh client vrf**

To configure a new VRF for use by the SSH client, use the `ssh client vrf` command. To remove the specified VRF, use the `no` form of this command.

```
ssh client vrf vrf-name
no ssh client vrf vrf-name
```

**Syntax Description**

| vrf-name | Specifies the name of the VRF to be used by the SSH client. |

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.8.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

An SSH client can have only one VRF.

If a specific VRF is not configured for the SSH client, the default VRF is assumed when applying other SSH client-related commands, such as `ssh client knownhost`, on page 278 or `ssh client source-interface`, on page 280.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows the SSH client being configured to start with the specified VRF:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh client vrf green
```
### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ssh client dscp &lt;value from 0 - 63&gt;</td>
<td>SSH Client supports setting DSCP value in the outgoing packets. If not configured, the default DSCP value set in packets is 16 (for both client and server).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ssh server**

To bring up the Secure Shell (SSH) server and to configure one or more VRFs for its use, use the `ssh server` command. To stop the SSH server from receiving any further connections for the specified VRF, use the `no` form of this command. Optionally ACLs for IPv4 and IPv6 can be used to restrict access to the server before the port is opened.

```
ssh server vrf vrf-name [ipv4 access-list ipv4 access list name] [ipv6 access-list ipv6 access list name]
no ssh server [vrf vrf name] v2
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>vrf vrf-name</code></td>
<td>Specifies the name of the VRF to be used by the SSH server. The maximum VRF length is 32 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ipv4 access-list</code></td>
<td>Configures an IPv4 access-list for access restrictions to the ssh server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ipv6 access-list</code></td>
<td>Configures an IPv6 access-list for access restrictions to the ssh server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>v2</code></td>
<td>Forces the SSH server version to be of only version 2.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

The default SSH server version is 2 (SSHv2), which falls back to 1 (SSHv1) if the incoming SSH client connection is set to SSHv1.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.8.0</td>
<td>The <code>vrf</code> keyword was supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

An SSH server must be configured at minimum for one VRF. If you delete all configured VRFs, including the default, the SSH server process stops. If you do not configure a specific VRF for the SSH client when applying other commands, such as `ssh client knownhost` or `ssh client source-interface`, the default VRF is assumed.

The SSH server listens for an incoming client connection on port 22. This server handles both Secure Shell Version 1 (SSHv1) and SSHv2 incoming client connections for both IPv4 and IPv6 address families. To accept only Secure Shell Version 2 connections, use the `ssh server v2`, on page 295 command.
To verify that the SSH server is up and running, use the `show process sshd` command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td></td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

In the following example, the SSH server is brought up to receive connections for VRF "green":

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh server vrf green
```

**Examples**

In the following example, the SSH server is configured to use IPv4 ACLs:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh vrf vrf name ipv4 access-list access list name
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show processes</td>
<td>Displays information about the SSH server. For more information, see the <em>Cisco IOS XR System Management Command Reference for the Cisco CRS Router</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ssh server v2</code>, on page 295</td>
<td>Forces the SSH server version to be only 2 (SSHv2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ssh server dscp &lt;value from 0 - 63&gt;</code></td>
<td>SSH server supports setting DSCP value in the outgoing packets. If not configured, the default DSCP value set in packets is 16 (for both client and server).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ssh server rekey-time**

To configure rekey of the ssh server key based on time. Use the **no** form of this command to remove the rekey interval.

```
ssh server rekey-time time in minutes
no ssh server rekey-time
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>rekey-time time in minutes</th>
<th>Specifies the rekey-time interval in minutes. The range is between 30 to 1440 minutes.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
<td>If no time interval is specified, the default interval is considered to be 30 minutes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

None.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.8.0</td>
<td>The <strong>vrf</strong> keyword was supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

In the following example, the SSH server rekey-interval of 450 minutes is used:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh server rekey-time 450
```
**ssh server rekey-volume**

To configure a volume-based rekey threshold for an SSH session. Use the `no` form of this command to remove the volume-based rekey threshold.

```
ssh server rekey-volume data in megabytes
no ssh server rekey-volume
```

**Syntax Description**

| `rekey-volume data in megabytes` | Specifies the volume-based rekey threshold in megabytes. The range is between 1024 to 4095 megabytes.
| Note | If no volume threshold is specified, the default size is considered to be 1024 MB.

**Command Default**

None.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.8.0</td>
<td>The <code>vrf</code> keyword was supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

In the following example, the SSH server rekey-volume of 2048 minutes is used:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh rekey-volume 2048
```
show ssh rekey

To display session rekey details such as session id, session rekey count, time to rekey, data to rekey, use the `show ssh rekey` command.

`show ssh rekey`

Command Default
None

Command Modes
EXEC

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines
The ssh rekey data is updated ten times between two consecutive rekeys.

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

The following sample output is from the `show ssh rekey` command:

```
# show ssh rekey

id  RekeyCount  TimeToRekey(min)  VolumeToRekey(MB)
-----------------------------------------------
Incoming Session
0   8           59.5             1024.0
```

This table describes the fields shown in the display.

Table 20: show ssh rekey Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rekey Count</td>
<td>Number of times the ssh rekey is generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TimeToRekey</td>
<td>Time remaining (in minutes) before the ssh rekey is regenerated based on the value set using the ssh server rekey-time command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VolumeToRekey</td>
<td>Volume remaining (in megabytes) before the ssh rekey is regenerated based on the value set using the <code>ssh server rekey-volume</code> command.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ssh server logging

To enable SSH server logging, use the `ssh server logging` command. To discontinue SSH server logging, use the `no` form of this command.

```
ssh server logging
no ssh server logging
```

**Syntax Description**

This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.8.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Once you configure the logging, the following messages are displayed:

- Warning: The requested term-type is not supported
- SSH v2 connection from %s succeeded (user:%s, cipher:%s, mac:%s, pty:%s)

The warning message appears if you try to connect using an unsupported terminal type. Routers running the Cisco IOS XR software support only the vt100 terminal type.

The second message confirms a successful login.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows the initiation of an SSH server logging:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh server logging
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ssh server, on page 284</td>
<td>Initiates the SSH server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ssh server rate-limit**

To limit the number of incoming Secure Shell (SSH) connection requests allowed per minute, use the `ssh server rate-limit` command. To return to the default value, use the `no` form of this command.

```markdown
ssh server rate-limit rate-limit
no ssh server rate-limit
```

**Syntax Description**

| **rate-limit** | Number of incoming SSH connection requests allowed per minute. Range is from 1 to 120. When setting it to 60 attempts per minute, it basically means that we can only allow 1 per second. If you set up 2 sessions at the same time from 2 different consoles, one of them will get rate limited. This is connection attempts to the ssh server, not bound per interface/username or anything like that. So value of 30 means 1 session per 2 seconds and so forth. |

---

**Command Default**

`rate-limit`: 60 connection requests per minute

**Command Modes**

Global Configuration mode

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Release</strong></th>
<th><strong>Modification</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `ssh server rate-limit` command to limit the incoming SSH connection requests to the configured rate. Any connection request beyond the rate limit is rejected by the SSH server. Changing the rate limit does not affect established SSH sessions.

If, for example, the `rate-limit` argument is set to 30, then 30 requests are allowed per minute, or more precisely, a two-second interval between connections is enforced.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Task ID</strong></th>
<th><strong>Operations</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to set the limit of incoming SSH connection requests to 20 per minute:

```plaintext
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh server rate-limit 20
```
ssh server session-limit

To configure the number of allowable concurrent incoming Secure Shell (SSH) sessions, use the ssh server session-limit command. To return to the default value, use the no form of this command.

**Syntax Description**

```
sessions  Number of incoming SSH sessions allowed across the router. The range is from 1 to 100.
```

**Note**

Although CLI output option has 1024, you are recommended to configure session-limit not more than 100. High session count may cause resource exhaustion.

**Command Default**

sessions: 64 per router

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

- **Release**: Release 2.0
  - **Modification**: This command was introduced.

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the ssh server session-limit command to configure the limit of allowable concurrent incoming SSH connections. Outgoing connections are not part of the limit.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to set the limit of incoming SSH connections to 50:

```text
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh server session-limit 50
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show processes</td>
<td>Displays information about the SSH server. For more information, see Cisco IOS XR System Management Command Reference for the Cisco CRS Router.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ssh server v2**

To force the SSH server version to be only 2 (SSHv2), use the `ssh server v2` command. To bring down an SSH server for SSHv2, use the `no` form of this command.

```bash
ssh server v2
no ssh server v2
```

**Syntax Description**

This command has no keywords or arguments.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.3.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Only SSHv2 client connections are allowed.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following example shows how to initiate the SSH server version to be only SSHv2:

```bash
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh server v2
```

**Related Commands**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ssh server, on page 284</td>
<td>Initiates the SSH server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ssh server netconf port**

To configure a port for the netconf SSH server, use the `ssh server netconf port` command in the global configuration mode. To return to the default port, use the `no` form of the command.

```
ssh server netconf port port number
no ssh server netconf portport number
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>port port-number</code></td>
<td>Port number for the netconf SSH server (default port number is 830).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Command Default**

The default port number is 830.

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 3.8.0</td>
<td>The <code>vrf</code> keyword was supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release 6.0</td>
<td>The <code>ssh server netconf</code> command is no longer auto completed to configure the default port. This command is now optional</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Starting with IOS-XR 6.0.0 it is no longer sufficient to configure a netconf port to enable netconf subsystem support. `ssh server netconf` needs to be at least configured for one `vrf`.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

This example shows how to use the `ssh server netconf port` command with port 831:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh server netconf port 831
```
## Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ssh server netconf</td>
<td>Configures the vrf(s), where netconf subsystem requests are to be received.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>netconf-yang agent ssh</td>
<td>Configures the <strong>ssh netconf-yang backend</strong> for the netconf subsystem (Required to allow the system to service netconf-yang requests). For more information, see the <em>Cisco ASR 9000 Series Aggregation Services Router System Management Command Reference</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ssh timeout**

To configure the timeout value for authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) user authentication, use the `ssh timeout` command. To set the timeout value to the default time, use the `no` form of this command.

```
ssh timeout seconds
no ssh timeout seconds
```

**Syntax Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>seconds</th>
<th>Time period (in seconds) for user authentication. The range is from 5 to 120.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Command Default**

`seconds`: 30

**Command Modes**

Global configuration

**Command History**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 2.0</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Usage Guidelines**

Use the `ssh timeout` command to configure the timeout value for user authentication to AAA. If the user fails to authenticate itself within the configured time to AAA, the connection is aborted. If no value is configured, the default value of 30 seconds is used.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

In the following example, the timeout value for AAA user authentication is set to 60 seconds:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ssh timeout 60
```
Secure Socket Layer Protocol Commands

This module describes the commands used to configure the Secure Socket Layer (SSL) protocol.

For detailed information about SSL concepts, configuration tasks, and examples, see the Implementing Secure Socket Layer on the Cisco IOS XR Software module in the Cisco IOS XR System Security Configuration Guide for the Cisco CRS Router.

- show ssl, page 300
show ssl

To display active Secure Socket Layer (SSL) sessions, use the `show ssl` command.

```
show ssl [ process-id ]
```

**Syntax Description**

- `process-id`:
  (Optional) Process ID (PID) of the SSL application. The range is from 1 to 1000000000.

**Command Default**

None

**Command Modes**

EXEC

**Command History**

- **Release**: Release 2.0
  - **Modification**: This command was introduced.

**Usage Guidelines**

To display a specific process, enter the process ID number. To get a specific process ID number, enter `run pidin` from the command line or from a shell.

The absence of any argument produces a display that shows all processes that are running SSL.

**Task ID**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples**

The following sample output is from the `show ssl` command:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ssl

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PID</th>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Peer</th>
<th>Port</th>
<th>Cipher-Suite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1261711</td>
<td>sslv3</td>
<td>Server</td>
<td>172.16.0.5</td>
<td>1296</td>
<td>DES-CBC3-SHA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

This table describes the fields shown in the display.
### Table 21: show ssl Field Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PID</td>
<td>Process ID of the SSL application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method</td>
<td>Protocol version (sslv2, sslv3, sslv23, or tlsv1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>SSL client or server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer</td>
<td>IP address of the SSL peer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Port</td>
<td>Port number on which the SSL traffic is sent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cipher-Suite</td>
<td>Exact cipher suite chosen for the SSL traffic. The first portion indicates the encryption, the second portion the hash or integrity method. In the sample display, the encryption is Triple DES and the Integrity (message digest algorithm) is SHA.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Related Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>run pidin</td>
<td>Displays the process ID for all processes that are running.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
show ssl
FIPS commands

This module describes the commands used in enabling the FIPS mode.
For detailed information about FIPS configuration tasks, and examples, see the Configuring FIPS Mode chapter in Cisco IOS XR System Security Configuration Guide for the Cisco CRS Router.

- crypto fips-mode, page 304
crypto fips-mode

To configure FIPS, use the crypto fips-mode command in the global configuration mode. To remove FIPS configuration, use the no form of this command.

crypto fips-mode
no crypto fips-mode

Syntax Description
This command has no keywords or arguments.

Command Default
None

Command Modes
Global configuration

Command History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Release</th>
<th>Modification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release 4.3.1</td>
<td>This command was introduced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usage Guidelines
Install and activate the hfr-k9sec-px.pie file before using this command.

Note
For the configuration to take effect, reload the router by using the reload command in the admin mode.

Use the show logging command to display the contents of logging buffers. You can use the show logging | i fips command to filter FIPS specific logging messages.

Task ID

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task ID</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crypto</td>
<td>read, write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples

This example shows how to configure FIPS:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# crypto fips-mode